

**МИНИСТЕРСТВО НАУКИ И ВЫСШЕГО ОБРАЗОВАНИЯ РОССИЙСКОЙ ФЕДЕРАЦИИ**

**Федеральное государственное бюджетное  
образовательное учреждение высшего образования**

**«НИЖЕГОРОДСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ  
ЛИНГВИСТИЧЕСКИЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ**

**им. Н.А. ДОБРОЛЮБОВА»  
(НГЛУ)**

**СИСТЕМАТИЗИРУЮЩИЙ КУРС  
ГРАММАТИКИ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА**

**(ИМЕННЫЕ ЧАСТИ РЕЧИ)**

**Учебное пособие**

**Издание 3-е, стереотипное**

**Нижний Новгород  
2018**

Печатается по решению редакционно-издательского совета НГЛУ.

Направления подготовки: 45.03.02 – *Лингвистика*, 44.03.01 – *Педагогическое образование*.

Дисциплина: Систематизирующий курс грамматики английского языка.

УДК 811.11'367.622(075.8)

ББК 81.432.1-2

С 409

Систематизирующий курс грамматики английского языка (именные части речи): Учебное пособие. 3-е изд., стер. – Н. Новгород: НГЛУ, 2018. – 169 с.

Предлагаемое пособие включает материалы, необходимые для успешного овладения следующими разделами систематизирующего курса грамматики английского языка: «Имя существительное», «Местоимение», «Имя прилагательное», в том числе сборник упражнений, расположенных по степени трудности. Предложения и отрывки, которые служат материалом упражнений, отобраны из современной английской и американской литературы, словарей, учебных пособий, и представляют собой образцы современного английского языка, типичные для него как по лексическому наполнению, так и по грамматическим структурам. Структура пособия предусматривает упражнения как аналитического, так и обобщающего характера с целью оптимизации учебного процесса. Материалы предназначены для самостоятельной и аудиторной работы студентов очного, заочного и вечернего отделений.

УДК 811.1'367.622(075.8)

ББК 81.432.1-2

Составители: И.Н. Кабанова, канд. филол. наук, доцент кафедры английской филологии НГЛУ им. Н.А. Добролюбова

В.И. Курышева, канд. филол. наук, доцент кафедры английской филологии НГЛУ им. Н.А. Добролюбова

Н.Н. Лисенкова, канд. филол. наук, доцент кафедры английской филологии НГЛУ им. Н.А. Добролюбова

Рецензент Л.М. Отрошко, канд. филол. наук

© НГЛУ, 2018

© Кабанова И.Н., Курышева В.И., Лисенкова Н.Н., 2018

# CONTENTS

<b>THE NOUN. CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS.....</b>	4
THE CATEGORY OF NUMBER OF NOUNS.....	16
THE CATEGORY OF CASE OF NOUNS.....	28
THE CATEGORY OF GENDER OF NOUNS.....	41
<b>THE PRONOUN.....</b>	44
PERSONAL PRONOUNS.....	46
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.....	48
SELF-PRONOUNS .....	50
RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.....	56
RELATIVE, CONJUNCTIVE, INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.....	58
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.....	64
EVERY/EACH.....	64
ALL (OF)/ THE WHOLE (OF)/ BOTH (OF).....	70
ALL (OF) THE AND THE WHOLE (OF).....	71
BOTH (OF) AND ALL (OF).....	71
BOTH (OF)/ EITHER/ NEITHER.....	74
OTHER/ANOTHER.....	78
SOME/ANY.....	79
BODY/ONE.....	83
MOST/MOST OF.....	85
NO/ NONE (OF)/ NOT ANY.....	86
MUCH/ MANY/ FEW/ A FEW/ LITTLE/ A LITTLE, (A) FEW (OF), (A) LITTLE (OF)....	90
ONE.....	94
RESTRICTIONS IN THE USE ON THE PROP-WORD ONE.....	96
AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE SUBJECT AND THE PREDICATE.....	101
<b>THE ADJECTIVE.....</b>	110
THE CATEGORY OF DEGREES OF COMPARISON.....	110
COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.....	114
ORDER OF ADJECTIVES.....	115
ADJECTIVE AND PARTICIPLE.....	120
ADJECTIVE AND PREPOSITION.....	121
ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB.....	122
ADJECTIVE, ADVERB, AND INTENSIFIER.....	127
CONSTRUCTIONS WITH COMPARISON.....	133
SUBSTANTIVISED ADJECTIVES.....	134
STATIVES.....	140
ANSWER KEY.....	141
<b>LIST OF AUTHORS AND BOOKS USED IN THE EXERCISES.....</b>	166

## THE NOUN. CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS

*Exercise 1. Define the class the italicized noun belongs to.*

1. Several wooden shingles had fallen from the *roof* of the *chapel* in the night. (Ken Follett)
2. My *organization* needs the *means* to buy *arms* for our *people*. (Jack Higgins)
3. On *Easter Monday*, *Joseph* went to *Gimmerton* fair with some *cattle*; and in the afternoon, I was busy getting up *linen* in the *kitchen*. (E. Bronte)
4. *The police* were baffled by the locked *gate*. (S. Sheldon)
5. That's terrible *news*. (S. Sheldon)
6. It's hard to have *faith* in your fellow *man* when you're forced to look at some of his *handiwork*. (S. Grafton)
7. *France* was a land, *England* was a *people*, but *America* was ... the graves at Shiloh and the tired, drawn, nervous faces of its great men. (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
8. *Scissors* are used to cut *the jeans*.
9. He'll cause *trouble* of some kind. I can guarantee it. (S. Grafton)
10. Have you put *pepper* in this dish? I like plenty of seasoning.
11. The morning *traffic* was still heavy and it was five past nine before we were able to come to *Melanie Joan's* rescue. (Robert B. Parker)
12. *Clothes* make the man. (Latin proverb)
13. Her gray *hair* was honest and her make-up was light. (S. Grafton)
14. She picked up her *wineglass* and drank most of it and lowered the glass and gazed at me over the rim of it. Then she threw *the contents* at me. She missed. (R.B. Parker)
15. *Place* was destroyed by *fire* about ten years back. *Congregation* rebuilt everything from the ground right on up. (S. Grafton)
16. At fifty and sixty, he'd no doubt look just the same, the years making only moderate adjustments to his good *looks*. (S. Grafton)
17. He put reading *spectacles* on the *end* of his *nose*. (Jack Higgins)
18. I observed once, indeed, something like *exultation* in his aspect: it was just when the *people* were bearing the *coffin* from the *house*. (E. Bronte)
19. The *money* doesn't matter to me. (S. Grafton)
20. In the wake of these burns, *species* of native plants known as fire followers appeared, dainty *beauties* emerging from *the ashes* of the charred and the dead. (S. Grafton)

21. It was a sweet substitute for the yet absent murmur of the summer *foliage*, which drowned that *music* about the Grange when the *trees* were *in leaf*. (E. Bronte)
22. I noticed a rather sober-looking *gentleman* in a black *coat* and striped *trousers*.
23. *The public* has a right to know these things. (S. Grafton)
24. ‘I don’t know, my Lord, I acted on my *father’s advice*.’ (John Galsworthy)
25. *Hareton* is gone with some *cattle* to the Lees. (E. Bronte)
26. I climbed the wooden *stairs* and knocked on the dilapidated *screen*. (S. Grafton)
27. I’d inform, if he were my own *son*, and it’s felony without benefit of *clergy*! (E. Bronte)
28. *Benny* put the *luggage* in the back and *Keogh* slung his duffle in. (Jack Higgins)
29. He said *thanks* for looking after his *belongings*.
30. The *resolution* to become a Red Cross *nurse*, taken under stimulus of *Jolly’s* enlistment, had been loyally fulfilled with the *irritation* and *regret* which all *Forsytes* feel at what curtails their individual *liberties*. (John Galsworthy)

**Exercise 2. Study the following contexts, state whether the italicized noun is countable or uncountable.**

1. a) I would have died by inches before I touched a *single hair* of his head. (E. Bronte)  
b) His *hair* was dark brown, a shock of it protruding from the Velcro-secured opening at the back. (S. Grafton)
2. a) ‘Sorry, pal, but I’m like a waitress. I don’t cook up *the trouble*. I just serve it. Have a nice day.’ (S. Grafton)  
b) ‘Why, oh! why should I have to expose my misfortune to the public like this? Why have to employ spies to peer into my private *troubles*?’ (John Galsworthy)
3. a) Often the biggest ‘losers’ in high school are the most eager to flaunt their later *successes*. (S. Grafton)  
b) *Success* and acclaim were seen as a means of validating one’s existence.
4. a) I was asked if I had had any previous *experience*.  
b) He is very reticent about his war *experiences*. (W.S. Maugham)

5. a) He could and would refuse to pay a penny piece over twelve thousand and fifty pounds – the extreme limit fixed in the correspondence; or rather he would pay and sue him for *damages*. (John Galsworthy)  
b) Can they do much *damage*?
6. a) That *money* was meant for paying the phone bill.  
b) The police, not being ignorant buffoons, had pursued the line as well, but had come up with nothing. No *moneys* unaccounted for, no meetings with unsavory characters, no apparent motive, no visible benefit. (Sue Grafton)
7. a) At first, I expected there would be *sad work* persuading you to let me keep my word to Linton. (E. Bronte)  
b) Beethoven's later *works* are startlingly original.
8. a) 'Oh, fie, silly child!' I exclaimed. 'If you had *any griefs*, you'd be ashamed to waste a tear on this little contrariety. You never had one shadow of substantial *sorrow*, Miss Catherine.' (E. Bronte)  
b) She was overcome with *grief* when her brother died.
9. 'No,' she repeated, and continued sauntering on, pausing, at intervals, to muse over a bit of *moss*, or a tuft of blanched *grass*, or a fungus spreading its bright orange among the heaps of brown *foliage*; and, ever and anon, her hand was lifted to her averted face. (E. Bronte)
10. *The china* was good, of a delicate pattern. (Dreiser)
11. a) *The papers* were dull, *the news* was local and stale, and the war news was all old. (Hemingway)  
b) This journal is available in *paper* and electronic form.
12. a) *A theatrical people*, the French! (John Galsworthy)  
b) The majority of the *people* were pleased to see the government fall.  
c) The English-speaking *peoples* share a common language.
13. The Council will remove two pieces of unwanted *furniture* if desired.
14. a) Dillon leaned over the parapet and looked down at *the waters* of the Thames flowing by. (Jack Higgins)  
b) There is hot and cold running *water* in all the bedrooms.
15. a) We'll hang on to our *arms* come what may. (Jack Higgins)  
b) The rain increased in a sudden rush and he took Sollazo by *the arm*. (Jack Higgins)
16. a) They were designed for *heavy weather*. (Jack Higgins)  
b) She goes out jogging *in all weathers*.
17. a) The *wines* of Australia are now of similar quality to many from France.  
b) I think I would like some *wine* though.

18. a) He's *a real gossip*. He loves to discuss and pass on news or rumours about people's private lives.
- b) Did you hear that interesting bit of *gossip* about Susan?

***Exercise 3. Insert the correct form of the verb and explain your choice. State the type of collective nouns.***

1. You know what the *police* here ..... like. (to be) (J.H. Chase)
2. I had a look at the paper, but there ..... much *news*. (not to be) (G. Orwell)
3. And the *baggage* ..... apparatus and appliances. (to contain) (Wells)
4. My *clothes* ..... organized in carefully laid-out categories, on hangers, spread on the bed, over the backs of chairs. (to be) (Robert B. Parker)
5. The door opened and Bennet Malek came in. He was four years younger than Donovan with the same fair *hair*. Where Donovan's .....glossy, Bennet's .....coarse, and he kept it cut short to discourage a visible tendency to curl. (to be) (S. Grafton)
6. The *sugar-tongs* ..... too wide for one of her hands, and she had to use both in wielding them. (to be) (Ch. Bronte)
7. He collected twenty-five hundred dollars for the life insurance and he'll get twenty-five thousand for the structural damage to the house. The *contents* .....uninsured. (to be) (Sue Grafton)
8. Not all *news* ..... bad news. (to be) (S. Grafton)
9. If *looks* .....language, the merest idiot might have guessed I was over head and ears: she understood me at last, and looked a return – the sweetest of all imaginable looks. (to have) (E. Bronte)
10. *Trouble* ..... a vacuum into which the rest of us get sucked. (to create) (S. Grafton)
11. The *outdoors*, as far as I can see, ..... made up almost entirely of copulating creatures who eat one another afterward. (to be) (S. Grafton)
12. Most of the office *staff* .....forced to scrounge parking elsewhere. (to be) (S. Grafton)
13. Take yourself and your dusters off; when *company* .....in the house, servants don't commence scouring and cleaning in the room, where they are! (to be) (E. Bronte)
14. The bookstore *personnel* ..... glancing at Melanie Joan. (to be) (Robert B. Parker)
15. Far from celebrating Guy's good fortune, the *public* ..... going to end up resenting his sudden wealth. (to be) (S. Grafton)

16. The *family* ..... doing what they can to cooperate, but it doesn't look good. (to be) (S. Grafton)
17. The *family* ..... agreed that the funeral should be held in Ireland. (to have)
18. The *family* ..... all gathering here for Christmas. (to be)
19. The end of Earnshaw was what might have been expected; it followed fast on his sister's: there.....scarcely *six months* between them. (to be) (E. Bronte)
20. 'I think it's safe to say this.....going to be *a very long two weeks*,' Henry murmured. (to be) (S. Grafton)
21. The only *people* who..... interested in the book ..... to be lawyers. (to be, to seem)
22. That *band*.....always had a reputation for performing better in the studio than live. (to have)
23. The *media*..... interested in this story. (to be)
24. *Money*..... nothing to me, but my cause does. (to mean) (Jack Higgins)
25. *Work* ..... starting to take over my life. (to be)

➤ As distinct from their Russian equivalents, some commonly used English nouns, in the meanings indicated, are singular in number and take the singular verb, or are plural in number and take the plural verb. Study the correspondence between English and Russian words given in the table.

English singular	Russian plural
<b>advice</b>	советы
<b>applause</b>	аплодисменты
<b>debate</b>	дебаты, прения
<b>fighting</b>	бои
<b>fruit</b> (when used collectively)	фрукты
<b>evidence</b>	улики, свидетельские показания
<b>funeral</b> (the plural – <b>funerals</b> – is used to indicate two or more occasions)	похороны
<b>gate</b> (the plural – <b>gates</b> – is used to denote two or more objects)	ворота
<b>gossip</b> (a <b>gossip</b> – сплетник)	сплетни
<b>hair</b>	волосы
<b>information</b>	сведения
<b>knowledge</b>	знания



<b>money</b>	деньги
<b>news</b>	новости
<b>progress</b>	успехи
<b>race</b>	соревнования, состязания
<b>sledge</b>	сани
<b>vacation</b> (the plural – <b>vacations</b> – is used when two or more events are meant)	каникулы
<b>watch, clock</b> (a regular countable noun)	часы
<b>election</b> (the plural – <b>elections</b> – is used when two or more events are meant)	выборы
<b>English plural</b>	<b>Russian singular</b>
<b>contents</b>	содержание (письма, бумаги, документа)
<b>clothes</b>	одежда
<b>opera-glasses</b>	бинокль
<b>wages</b> (pl. tantum)	зарплата
<b>grapes, carrots, beets, potatoes, onions, radishes</b> (when used collectively)	виноград, морковь, свекла, картофель, лук, редис
<b>stairs</b> (pl. tantum)	лестница
<b>police</b> (multitude noun)	полиция

- Note the singular and the plural form of the noun in the following patterns:

He spared <b>no effort</b> to get you out.	Он не жалел <b>сил</b> , чтобы помочь вам выбраться.
It'll require/ it'll cost them <b>a lot of effort</b> .	Это потребует большой затраты <b>сил</b> (больших <b>усилий</b> ).
You have <b>no grounds</b> for <b>complaint</b> .	У вас нет <b>основания</b> для <b>жалоб</b> .
Don't <b>go into details</b> .	Не вдавайтесь <b>в детали</b> .
He explained everything <b>in detail</b> .	Он объяснил все <b>в деталях</b> .
<b>On second thoughts</b> , he decided not to tell her anything.	<b>Поразмыслив</b> , он решил ничего ей не говорить.
He was <b>deep in thought</b> .	Он был погружен <b>в свои мысли</b> .
<b>compound numerals with one</b> (e.g. twenty-one, thirty-one) take <i>the noun in the plural</i>	<i>Twenty-one students were present at the lecture.</i>

**Exercise 4. In the sentences below, only one of the alternatives in brackets is appropriate. Cross out the one that is wrong.**

1. I could see that closets were being emptied, ..... – suits and dress shirts – packed into large cardboard boxes. (the content/ the contents) (S. Grafton)
2. He wants to sell his business and move to Napa and grow ..... (grape/ grapes) (Terry McMillan)
3. It was a very dark evening for summer: the clouds appeared inclined to thunder, and I said to bring him home without further ..... (trouble/ troubles). (E. Bronte)
4. The police ..... already talking to people at the country club. (is/are) (S. Grafton)
5. There ..... news from home. (is/are) (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
6. The apparition had outstripped me: it stood looking through ..... (the gate/ the gates). (E. Bronte)
7. There were only overgrown bushes and weeds, a little orange tree crippled by the lack of water and covered with hard ..... turning brown because ..... hadn't been picked. (fruit/ fruits; it/ they) (Sue Grafton)
8. And, staring at his uncle's face, he had a quite unaccountable vision of a woman with dark eyes, gold hair, and a white neck, who smelt nice, and had pretty silken ..... which he had liked feeling when he was quite small (cloth/clothes). (John Galsworthy)
9. The country's first general ..... since it won independence ..... to be held next month. (election/ elections; is/are)
10. Mrs Linton's ..... appointed to take place on the Friday following her decease. (funeral/funerals; was/were) (E. Bronte)
11. The man's smooth hair ..... gray. The woman's smooth hair ..... blond, and other than that, allowing for anatomy, they looked interchangeable. (was/were; was/were) (Robert B. Parker)
12. I didn't need ..... on how to dress. (advice/advices) (Sue Grafton)
13. ...this watch ..... a special favourite with Mr. Pickwick, having been carried about... for a greater number of years than we feel called upon to state, at present. (was/ were)
14. The nurse's wages ..... good. (was/ were) (Collins)
15. Money ..... so scarce that it could fairly be said not to exist at all. (was/were) (Dreiser)
16. Its greatest virtue, as your uncle says, is its simplicity. It could work perfectly just like ..... On the other hand, even ..... break down

- sometimes. (a Swiss watch/ Swiss watch; Swiss watches/ a Swiss watch)  
(Jack Higgins)
17. Sollazo told him in ..... of his conversation with Salamone.  
(detail/details) (Jack Higgins)
  18. They confirm the mention in the New York Times, but in more .....  
(detail/details) (Jack Higgins)
  19. Linda likes exotic ..... (fruit/ fruits)
  20. .... are prevented from sprouting by a new technology using radiation.  
(potatoes and onions/ potato and onion)
  21. I put the orange in his hand, and bade him tell his father that a woman  
called Nelly Dean was waiting to speak with him, by the garden .....  
(gate/gates) (E. Bronte)
  22. I did not fear her breaking bounds; because the ..... generally  
locked, and I thought she would scarcely venture forth alone, if they had  
stood open. (gate/ gates; was/were) (E. Bronte)
  23. And the ..... open: he is somewhere out of hearing; for he  
would not reply, though I shouted at the top of the fold as loud as I could.  
(gate/ gates; is/are) (E. Bronte)
  24. At sunrise ..... opened again. And the Jewish merchants were  
permitted to go into the city of Krakow to conduct business with the  
gentiles. (gate/ gates; was/were) (S. Sheldon)
  25. ‘How did you do it?’ ‘From the river, Brigadier, but I’d rather not get into  
.....’ (detail/details) (Jack Higgins)
  26. ‘Sure,’ Cassidy said. ‘I’ve got all the .....’ (detail/details)  
(Jack Higgins)
  27. ‘And they get the ..... of my uncle’s labours?’ (fruit/ fruits) (Jack  
Higgins)
  28. ‘About two miles on. Let me explain,’ and the old woman went into  
..... (detail/details) (Jack Higgins)
  29. Sometimes Jacob seemed so deep in ..... (thought/thoughts), I wasn’t  
sure if he was listening. (S. Meyer)
  30. I hope you are not having ..... (a second thought/ second thoughts)  
about the dance on Saturday. Please say you’ll still be coming.

***Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into English.***

1. Оглавление книги составили заново.
2. Полиция искала преступника по всему городу.
3. Лестница была старая.

4. Ешьте фрукты, когда они созрели.
5. Улики против него.
6. Похороны всегда печальны.
7. Ворота закрыты.
8. Это сплетни.
9. Отсутствие новостей – это хорошая новость.
10. Современная одежда красива и удобна.
11. Лук доморощенный.
12. Вы будете принимать участие в соревнованиях по гребле?
13. Ваши часы отстают на пять минут.
14. Это надежные сведения.
15. Актеров встретили бурей аплодисментов.
16. Прения были долгими.
17. Ваши успехи в шведском языке просто удивительны.
18. Это неожиданные новости.
19. Каникулы были веселые.
20. Он не жалел сил, чтобы помочь вам выбраться.
21. У Вас есть основания для жалоб?
22. Если бы лектор не вдавался в детали, выступление было бы намного короче и интереснее.
23. Я ему все детально объяснил.
24. Он был погружен в свои мысли и не слышал, как мы вошли.
25. Поразмыслив, она решила ему помочь.

Some nouns with a singular form can be treated either as singular (with a singular verb) or plural (with a plural verb):

- **The council** *has* (or *have*) postponed a decision on the new road.

Other words like this include **association, audience, class, club, college, committee, community, company, crowd, department, electorate, enemy, family, firm, generation, government, group, jury, orchestra, population, press, public, school, staff, team, university**, and the names of specific organizations such as **the Bank of England, the BBC, IBM, Sony**. We use a singular verb if we see the institution or organization as a whole unit, and a plural verb if we see it as a collection of individuals. Often you can use either

with very little difference in meaning, although in formal writing (such as academic writing) it is more common to use a singular verb.

➤ In some contexts a plural form of the verb is needed. We would say:

- The committee usually **raise** their hands to vote ‘Yes’. (*not* ...raises its hands...)

as this is something that the individuals do, not the committee as a whole. In others, a singular form is preferred. We would say:

- The school **is** to close next year. (*not* The school are...)

as we are talking about something which happens to the school as a building or institution, not to the individuals that comprise it.

➤ Some nouns are usually plural and take a plural verb. These include **belongings, clothes, congratulations, earnings, goods, outskirts, particulars** (=information), **premises** (=building), **riches, savings, stairs, surroundings, thanks**:

- The company’s **earnings** *have increased* for the last five years.

➤ The nouns **police, people, and staff** also always have a plural verb. The noun **whereabouts** **can** be used with either a singular or plural verb.

➤ **Nouns in –ics (acoustics, athletics, economics, gymnastics, linguistics, mathematics, phonetics, politics, statistics, physics)** take a singular verb when they are considered abstract concepts, whereas a plural verb and plural modifier are preferred when practical manifestations of the concept are emphasized. Compare:

<i>academic disciplines</i>	<i>general use</i>
• <b>Politics</b> <i>is</i> popular at this university.	• Her <b>politics</b> <i>are</i> bordering on the fascist. (= political belief)
• <b>Statistics</b> <i>was</i> always my worst subject.	• <b>Statistics</b> <i>are</i> able to prove anything you want them to. (= numerical information)
• <b>Economics</b> <i>has</i> only recently been recognized as a scientific study.	• The <b>economics</b> behind their policies <i>are</i> unreasonable. (= the financial system)
• <b>Mathematics</b> <i>is</i> a difficult subject.	• His <b>mathematics</b> <i>are</i> very poor (= his calculations)

**Exercise 6. Complete the following extracts with either is/are, was/were or has/have. If both singular and plural forms are possible, write them both.**

1. Sony ..... announced rising profits for the third year running.
2. The crowd ..... growing restless as the day got hotter.

3. The police ..... issued a warrant for Adamson's arrest.
4. The public ..... a right to know how the money is to be spent.
5. When she was found, her face was bruised and her clothes ..... torn.
6. Thomas was thought to be in Spain, although his exact whereabouts ..... unknown.
7. The stairs leading to the exit ..... steep and dangerous, said the report.
8. Lord Travers' family ..... lived in the house for twelve generations.
9. The college ..... spent over £500,000 on a new sports centre.
10. People ..... running in all directions, trying to get away.
11. German measles .....a particularly dangerous illness for pregnant women.
12. Politics .....a topic best avoided with people you don't know well.
13. The United Nations ..... agreed to deploy a peacekeeping force.
14. The United Nations .....in disagreement on this usage.
15. Security police .....extremely efficient. (J.H. Chase)
16. He was silent, obsessed by the thought: 'I will hate this woman. I will hate her.' That ..... the trouble! If only he could! He shot a glance at her, who stood unmoving against the wall with her head up and her hands clasped, for all the world as if she were going to be shot. (John Galsworthy)
17. It .....the first good news I'd had since I tracked down the cat. (Sue Grafton)
18. Linton's looks .....very languid. (E. Bronte)
19. Aunt Isabella sent papa a beautiful lock of his hair; it .....lighter than mine – more flaxen, and quite as fine. (E. Bronte)
20. My brother thinks that economics .....really interesting. I disagree.

***Exercise 7. Correct mistakes in the following sentences if any.***

1. The island's politics is complex, with over twelve parties competing for power.
2. Gymnasts from over 40 countries are competing in Madrid this weekend.
3. Economics has become an increasingly popular course at university.
4. The latest news of the earthquake survivors are very disturbing.
5. Jim's politics has changed considerably since he was in his twenties.
6. Diabetes are an illness caused by too much sugar in the blood.

7. Recent government statistics show a sharp decline in crime.
8. Women's gymnastics are no longer dominated by eastern Europeans.
9. Statistics are now compulsory for all students taking a course in engineering.
10. For a good health we should eat a few vegetables every day, as well as a few fruits.
11. Most years, over three hundred athletes competes in the games.
12. The economics of the plan is worrying investors.
13. Measles is still a fairly serious childhood disease in some countries.
14. 'These are tactics. We lawyers are famous for our tactics. It is the slices and spins we put on the ball, the angles and speed we use to bring about a certain necessary effect.' (Patricia D. Cornwell)
15. The logistics of the system don't really matter much because I can't let you see the master tape without a properly executed subpoena. (S. Grafton)
16. The money are a touchy issue. (S. Grafton)
17. The Asthma Helpline will be able to give you an advice.
18. Rickets are a disease caused by a deficiency of vitamin D.
19. You can't hold a classical concert in the village hall; the acoustics is terrible.
20. Dominoes are played by a lot of older men in cafés.
21. Politics means nothing to me, but Michael is a good man and I trust him. (Jack Higgins)

➤ Some nouns commonly uncountable are used as plurals in fixed phrases:

- *with the definite article:*
  - I'm sorry, I'll have to report you to **the authorities**.
  - He looked at the mess and raised his eyes to **the heavens**.
- *without an article:*
  - Do you need to claim travel **expenses**?
- *with possessive pronouns:*
  - We'll need to keep a close eye on **their activities**.
  - What do you know about **his likes and dislikes**?

**Exercise 8. Put one of the nouns in each of the sentences.**

<i>heavens</i>	<i>sights</i>	<i>waters</i>	<i>authorities</i>	<i>expenses</i>	<i>odds</i>
<i>sands</i>	<i>basics</i>	<i>travels</i>	<i>powers</i>	<i>movements</i>	<i>terms</i>
<i>matters</i>	<i>hopes</i>	<i>weathers</i>	<i>airs and graces</i>	<i>interests</i>	<i>talks</i>

1. The shoplifter was arrested and handed over to the .....
2. The ..... opened and we had to run for cover to avoid getting wet.
3. United think they can win but I suspect the ..... are heavily against them.
4. ‘What are you going to do in Paris?’ ‘oh, just see the .....’
5. I think we need to negotiate the ..... of this agreement.
6. Do you need to claim ..... for the trip?
7. The peace ..... have broken down again.
8. They keep changing the aims of the project and I feel I’m on shifting .....
9. He told me all his ..... and fears.
10. I can’t give you permission I’m afraid: you’ll have to ask the ..... that be.
11. I hear he’s off on his ..... again.
12. What are your ..... over the next few days?
13. They discussed a range of important .....
14. We have to get back to ..... to understand why the software won’t work.
15. The oil rig was based in offshore .....
16. In the ..... of the neighbours, could you please leave quietly?
17. She puts on ridiculous .....
18. He goes out in all .....

## THE CATEGORY OF NUMBER OF NOUNS

### *Means to express the category of number:*

- Morphological (the endings -s, -en etc.);
- Root-vowel gradation (man-men);
- Syntactic means (by means of agreement deer – deer; sheep – sheep).

1. The normal plural ends in -(e)s; -es for words ending in -s; -x; -z; -ch; -sh.

Note: if the pronunciation of **ch** is /k/, **only -s is added.**

2. *Nouns in -o* have -s in the plural if:



- the -o follows another vowel (studio – studios; zoo – zoos);
- the noun is an abbreviation (photo – photos; piano – pianos);
- the noun is of Italian origin and denotes musical terms (canto – cantos; solo – solos);
- exceptions: zero – zeros;
- both with -s or -es: banjo; buffalo; commando; flamingo; motto; volcano; tornado; grotto; halo; cargo.

***Irregular Plurals:***

1. *Nouns in -f (e):*

- change -f(e) to -ve: calf; elf; half; knife; leaf; life; loaf; self; sheaf; shelf; thief; wife; wolf; But: still life – still lifes;
- take either -ves or -s: dwarf; scarf; wharf; hoof; kerchief; handkerchief;
- keep the -f: belief; chief; cliff; proof; roof; safe; sniff; cuff; gulf.

2. *Vowel interchange:* foot – feet; goose – geese; mouse – mice; louse – lice; tooth – teeth; man – men; woman – women;

3. *The ending -en:* child – children; ox – oxen; brother – brethren; But: brothers in arms;

4. *Latin words:*

Singular	Plural
-um bacterium	-a bacteria
-a formula	-ae formulae
-us bacillus genius	-i bacilli genii; geniuses
-ex/ix index	-ices/es indices; indexes

5. *Greek words:*

Singular	Plural
-on criterion	-a criteria
-is [is] crisis	-es [i:z] crises

6. *French words:*

Singular	Plural
-eu/eau [ou] bureau	-s/x [z] bureaux
-corps [ko:]	-corps [ko:z]

***Exercise 1. Give the plural form (two plural forms if possible) of the following nouns.***

a) lens, dish, safe, rodeo, speech, watch, patriarch, pro, berry, face, portfolio, journey, tomato, cry, key, fox, rock, bush, enemy, hero, bunch, volcano, pie, possibility, echo, video, joy, extremity, spy, lie, tiptoe, stitch, Hindoo, essay, adagio, boss, waltz, quiz, fez, monarch, mosquito, quay.

b) sheaf, knife, louse, swine, ox, roof, leaf, sheep, ship, youth, loss, goose, moose, deer, wolf, mouse, foot, handkerchief, thief, birth, bath, fish, wharf, hearth, house, Burmese, Roman, proof, life, cheese, Milanese.

c) axilla, cortex, phalanx, sinus, hernia, sanctum, vortex, condominium, axis, continuum, phenomenon, adieu, fungus, census, crisis, datum, apparatus, antenna, stimulus, medium, analysis, delirium, basis, genius, formula, criterion, appendix, plateau, album, agenda, diagnosis.

d) read-out, brother-in-law, clergyman, downfall, looker-on, Englishwoman, man-of-war, penknife, forget-me-not, mischief-maker, hang-up, finger-tip, court-martial, stepdaughter, mouthful, sit-up, telltale, lean-to, intake, rule of thumb, glasshouse, bird of prey, commander-in-chief, woman priest, woman-hater, house-husband, get-together, give-away, credit card user, German, merry-go-round, lady friend, man student, manhole.

***Exercise 2. Give the singular form of the italicized noun if possible.***

1. What are the signs and symptoms of *shingles*?
2. The buildings have been designed to blend in with their *surroundings*.
3. Emergency teams are still clearing *the debris* from the plane crash.
4. He belonged to a family of *literati*.
5. Pulling out the nerves with red hot *pincers* requires more coolness than knocking on the head. (E. Bronte)
6. Sometimes you win the lottery, but *the odds* are against. (S. Grafton)
7. ‘Just like that?’ I asked. ‘She didn’t ask for ID or *credentials*?’ (S. Grafton)
8. But he still knew a diamond when he saw one, and during the week before her birthday he had taken occasion, on his way into the Poultry or his way out therefrom, to dally a little before the greater jewellers where one got, if not one’s money worth, at least a certain cachet with the *goods*. (John Galsworthy)
9. Mr. Earnshaw carved bountiful *platefuls*, and the mistress made them merry with lively talk. (E. Bronte)
10. Mrs. Linton, who was very much excited, bade me accompany her up *stairs*. (E. Bronte)
11. I figured Tasha would be in touch with him and she could give him *the particulars*. (S. Grafton)
12. I didn’t feel as if I were in the company of a creature of my own *species*: it appeared that he would not understand, though I spoke to him; so I stood off, and held my tongue, in great perplexity. (E. Bronte)

13. 'A positive labour of Hercules, I assure you! If it be achieved, I have cause to return *thanks*.' (E. Bronte)
14. I perceived she was in purgatory throughout the day, and wearying to find an opportunity of getting by herself, or paying a visit to Heathcliff, who had been locked up by the master: as I discovered, on endeavouring to introduce to him a private mess of *victuals*. (E. Bronte)
15. I love all his *looks*, and all his *actions*, and him entirely and altogether. (E. Bronte)
16. Oh, confound the vapid thing! He's absorbed in drying his *feet*, and never looks at her. (E. Bronte)
17. During that week of gloom such as no Forsyte could remember, very young Nicholas attended so many drills in his *corps*, 'The Devil's Own,' that Nicholas consulted the family physician about his son's health, and was alarmed to find that he was perfectly sound. (John Galsworthy)
18. Have you thought about *gymnastics*? I think it's very good for you.
19. Having opened, I emptied the whole *contents* into my apron, and took them with me to examine at leisure in my own chamber. (E. Bronte)
20. The temperature should be around freezing tonight – it's time to get the winter *clothes* out.
21. Anyway, she's been getting *a series* of harassing phone calls and things happening to her lately, and it's making her nervous. (R.B. Parker)

***Exercise 3. Put the words in brackets into the sentences in the correct form: plural or singular.***

1. Grans insisted I bring ..... (grapefruit) (Patricia D. Cornwell)
2. The building itself was a one-story stucco structure, painted a plain sand color, bristling with assorted ..... (antenna) (S. Grafton)
3. The roof was composed of old red tile, mottled with soft green ..... (alga). (S. Grafton)
4. The Automated Name Index file would either show no record for the ..... given, or would show a match for last name, first name, middle initial, and birthdate. (criterion) (S. Grafton)
5. I turned left onto Bay Street. Against the backdrop of evergreens, the profusion of bright pink and orange ..... clashed with the magenta bougainvillea that tumbled across the fences in my neighborhood. (geranium) (S. Grafton)

6. Malek Construction consisted of a series of linked trailers, arranged like ....., located in the cul-de-sac of an industrial park. (domino) (S. Grafton)
7. Without more ceremonious ....., he marched out. (adieu) (John Galsworthy)
8. ... and on the Tuesday, a little after dark, when my master, from sheer fatigue, had been compelled to retire a couple of hours, I went and opened one of the windows, moved by his perseverance to give him a chance of bestowing on the fading image of his idol one final ..... (adieu) (E. Bronte)
9. Three ..... of soup convinced him that he could not eat; and, causing a cab to be summoned, he drove to Paddington Station and took the first train to Reading. (mouthful) (John Galsworthy)
10. She enjoyed her freedom, and possessed herself with a sort of virginal passion; the warmth which she would have lavished on Bosinney, and of which – given her Forsyte tenacity – he must surely have tired, she now expended in championship of the underdogs and budding ..... of the artistic world. (genius) (John Galsworthy)
11. As we talked, we neared a door that opened on the road; and my young lady, lightening into sunshine again, climbed up, and seated herself on the top of the wall, reaching over to gather some hips that bloomed scarlet on the summit branches of the wild rose trees, shadowing the highway side: the lower ..... had disappeared, but only birds could touch the upper, except from Cathy's present station. (fruit) (E. Bronte)
12. On every flat surface was artfully arranged the owner's collection of porcelain figurines: ....., ....., ....., ..... and ..... – all in pinks lavenders. (shepherd, ballerina, courtier, elf, fairy) (Lawrence Sanders)
13. ... in wet weather he took to smoking with Joseph, and they sat like ....., one on each side of the fire. (automaton) (E. Bronte)
14. The entire world is a dreadful collection of ..... that she did exist, and that I have lost her! (memorandum) (E. Bronte)
15. 'I desire no further ..... from you,' answered Mr. Linton. 'You knew your mistress's nature, and you encouraged me to harass her.' (advice) (E. Bronte)
16. Much of the terrain in this area was undeveloped, the landscape littered with enormous sandstone boulders and prickly ..... with leaves as large as fleshy Ping-Pong paddles. (cactus) (S. Grafton)

17. The Malek estate sat close to the borders of the backcountry, ..... of dark green in a region dense with pale chaparral. (an oasis/ oases) (S. Grafton)
18. To our right, a solid wash of ..... blanketed the banks of an empty creek bed. (nasturtium) (S. Grafton)
19. I took ..... and caught her from behind and lifted her, holding her by her upper arms, up the last stair and steered her around the stairwell into an alcove near and to the left of the entrance to the bar. (a quick two steps/ quick two steps) (R.B. Parker)
20. .... don't count. Not like kids do. (in-law) (Terry McMillan)
21. He could not bear her vowels, her '.....'; he resented the way she had looked at him, as if it were his fault that Annette could never bear him a son! His fault! (r) (John Galsworthy)
22. Just a few little questions. Really extraneous to my investigation, but I like to dot the ..... and cross the ..... . Could you tell me how you and your family met Helene and Turner Pierce? (i, t) (Lawrence Sanders)
23. .... of the results shows that the Socialists have won. (an early analysis/ early analyses)
24. Mr. Linton had put on her pillow, in the morning, a handful of golden ..... (crocus) (E. Bronte)
25. 'I was admiring this enormous cat.' 'That's Lady Chatterley.' 'What happened to her tail?' 'She's ..... .' (a Manx/ Manx) (S. Grafton)
26. 'Give over with that baby-work!' I interrupted, dragging the pillow away, and turning the holes towards the mattress, for she was removing its ..... by ..... (content/ contents; handful) (E. Bronte)
27. He was already as insubstantial as a ghost, all form without ....., a series of fragmented images without permanence. (content/ contents) (S. Grafton)
28. The philosophic vein in him, of course, had always been too liable to crop out of the ..... of pure Forsyteism, so they were in a way prepared for his interment in a strange spot. (stratum) (John Galsworthy)
29. At the far end, ..... looked out on the rear lawn. (solarium) (S. Grafton)
30. I get out my old phone book and starting with the ....., go down each entry looking for someone, anybody I haven't talked to for a long time, someone I went to college with – even a long-lost relative – anybody I used to really connect with or once felt close to but by the time I get to the ..... I'm ready to give up. (A, D) (Terry McMillan)

31. I don't wanna sit and listen to him saying his ..... and counting to a hundred over and over till it's my turn. (a-b-c/ a-b-c-'s) (Terry McMillan)
32. Like the rest of Virginia's citizens, whenever an execution was scheduled I found out from the ..... whether all appeals had been exhausted or the governor had granted clemency. (medium) (Patricia D. Cornwell)
33. But the ..... was cast, he could not go back. (die, dice) (John Galsworthy)
34. My life was feeling a lot like a game of ..... right now. (die, dice) (S. Meyer)
35. If the dead villain could rise from his grave to abuse me for his offspring's ..... I should have the fun of seeing the said ..... fight him back again, indignant that he should dare to rail at the one friend he has in the world. (wrong/ wrongs, offspring/ offsprings) (E. Bronte)

**Zero plural nouns** are words that are unchangeable in the form but distinguish the meaning semantically. They include:

- some animal nouns: **deer; reindeer; sheep; grouse; plaice; moose; grouse; swine; cod; herring (herrings also possible); hake; mackerel; pike; salmon; trout; But: sharks;** other animal nouns vary between -s and zero plural (**buffalo; giraffe; lion; duck; fowl; partridge; pheasant**) often depending on whether they occur in a hunting context, in which case the -s is often dropped. Compare:
  - These graceful **antelopes** have just been bought by the zoo.
  - They went to Africa to shoot **antelope**;
    - some nouns with singular and plural without -s: **craft (= boat); aircraft; hovercraft; spacecraft; counsel (= lawyer); offspring; quid:**
  - We saw *a few aircraft*;
  - *Both counsel* asked for an adjournment;
    - mass media (radio, TV, newspapers) sometimes take a singular verb, sometimes a plural one, without any difference in meaning;
    - some nouns denoting nationalities: **Chinese; Swiss; Vietnamese:**
  - He is *a Vietnamese*;
  - *The Vietnamese* are noted for their cookery.
    - **Fish** is the normal plural of *fish* (singular), but **fishes** can also be used, especially to refer to species of fish:
  - **My goldfish** has died. (= one)
  - **My goldfish** have died. (more than one)
  - You'll see many **kinds of fish(es)** in the fish market.

- the words **kind, sort, type** when occurring in the phrase *these/those + Noun + of* frequently omit the -s:
- *These kind of people* always complain (or *this kind of people* with both nouns in the singular);
  - some nouns with singular and plural both with -s: **barracks; crossroads; innings; bellows; means; gallows; headquarters; series; species; works; gasworks.**
- The firm's **headquarters** *is/ are* in London.

**Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps in these sentences with the correct article, the correct form of the noun (singular or plural) or the correct form of the verb. Pay attention to the use of animal nouns.**

1. Mr. Heathcliff has just honoured me with a call. About seven days ago he sent me a brace of ..... – the last of the season. (grouse) (E. Bronte)
2. I felt that God had forsaken the stray ..... there to its own wicked wanderings, and an evil beast prowled between it and the fold, waiting his time to spring and destroy. (sheep) (E. Bronte)
3. Next day, over a thinly wooded hillside, they shot scrawny birds, distant poor relations to the ..... (partridge) (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
4. Heathcliff would as soon lift a finger at you as the king would march his army against a colony of ..... (mouse) (E. Bronte)
5. I distinguished ..... cropping the short turf on the graves. (a moor sheep/ moor sheep) (E. Bronte)
6. I was going to the Grange one evening and, just at the turn of the Heights, I encountered a little boy with ..... and two lambs before him. (sheep) (E. Bronte)
7. These white swine ..... not live. (does/ do) (Sabatini)
8. ‘Good,’ I said. ‘No one shall tell me again that fish ..... no sense with them.’ (has/ have) (Llewellyn)
9. The deer ..... ravaging the man’s fields. (was/ were) (Twain)
10. At Capracotta, he had told me, there ..... trout in the stream below the town. (was/ were) (Hemingway)
11. ‘What have we got for supper?’ ‘..... salmon. I got ..... huge fish at the fishmonger’s for only five pounds.’
12. Cathy had been caught in the fact of plundering, or, at least, hunting out the nests of ..... The Heights were Heathcliff’s land, and he was reproving the poacher. (grouse) (E. Bronte)

13. Too much rain, too much wind. The sheep ..... thrive. (doesn't/ don't)  
(Jack Higgins)
14. Mind your chores now. The sheep in the north meadow ..... seeing to.  
(needs/ need) (Jack Higgins)
15. It was still raining heavily and very misty. Suddenly there was the sound of  
..... sheep baaing over on the right. (Jack Higgins)
16. There were five ....., standing in water up to their bellies, marooned  
from the look of it, as miserable as any living creature could be. (sheep)  
(Jack Higgins)
17. Deer ..... frequently seen in the meadow at dusk. (is/ are)
18. Birds, mammals, reptiles, and ..... that are not hunted, fished, or  
trapped need protection too. (fish)
19. The illustrations and photographs of ..... and coral of the Great Barrier  
Reef are extraordinary. (fish)
20. The tropical fish ..... transferred to another department. (was/ were)
21. When ..... were first brought into the Colorado wilderness, no one  
could have predicted how popular the animal would become. (llama)
22. 'I don't see why not. If not him, someone else. It would be a good way out  
if we did manage to make a run for it and ..... hot on our heels.'  
(hound) (Jack Higgins)
23. Avenger, a motor launch a friend of mine up the coast brought for the  
..... fishing only ..... went away. (shark) (Jack Higgins)
24. It was Marian's work to drive ..... swine out on to the slope and keep  
an eye on them.
25. Small forest ..... are selective feeders and, as a consequence, are  
solitary and monogamous. (antelope)
26. Across the plain a herd of ..... ran, and, then, pivoted all at once like a  
school of ..... (antelope, fish)
27. We have spent two hours an evening replanting brassica modules that his  
..... and ..... would promptly pull out again. (pheasant, partridge)
28. Thousands of starving ....., too weak to make the crossing, are being  
carried across in landing craft. (reindeer)
29. On the opposite shore I saw two large gray black shapes: .....! (moose)
30. When the ..... were slaughtered, they lay so thick on the ground that  
you could walk for miles on the bodies. (buffalo)



**Exercise 5. Fill in the gaps in these sentences with a, an, the, nothing (-) or the correct form from the brackets. Pay attention to the use of zero plural nouns.**

1. It was ..... *series* that had made her the preeminent television star in the country. (R.B. Parker)
2. Bennet settled into the chair to my left with ..... *series* of creakings. (S. Grafton)
3. Included in ..... *series* is 'The Enchanted Horse,' among other famous children's stories. (this/ these)
4. Without me in between, you would seem like ..... *different species*. (John Galsworthy)
5. The entire absence of sentiment in her inspired ..... *queer species* of contempt in Soames. (John Galsworthy)
6. *That species* of butterflies ..... commonly seen in many parts of North and South America. (is/ are)
7. It was a close, sultry day: devoid of sunshine, but with a sky too dappled and hazy to threaten rain; and our place of meeting had been fixed at the guide-stone, by ..... *crossroads*. (E. Bronte)
8. He has reached ..... *career crossroads*.
9. I stated before that I didn't know how he gained his money; neither am I aware of ..... *means* he took to raise his mind from the savage ignorance into which it was sunk. (E. Bronte)
10. I gazed round for ..... *means* of diverting her thoughts. (E. Bronte)
11. 'I say, Mr. Heathcliff,' I replied, 'you must not: you never shall, through ..... *means*. Another encounter between you and the master would kill her altogether.' (my/ these) (E. Bronte)
12. All *means* ..... been used to get him to change his mind. (has/ have)
13. *Means* ..... easily found. (was/ were) (Thackeray)
14. Hold your tongue, you foul-mouthed thief, you! you shall go to ..... *gallows* for this. (E. Bronte)
15. Next a policeman puppet arrived carrying ..... *gallows*.
16. *The works* ..... his country, his home, his reason for being. (was/ were) (Heym)
17. *The works* ..... to be closed. (was/were)
18. Climbing the hill together, we stopped for a moment to look at ..... *army barracks* on the edge of town.

19. New *barracks* ..... rising where dilapidated Navy quarters have been. (is/ are)
20. The army *headquarters* ..... on the other side of the square, in a former colonial mansion. (is/ are)
21. Search and rescue *craft* ..... at the scene of the crash this morning. (was/ were)
22. Later I was told that in criminal trials *counsel* ..... not permitted to talk to their witnesses during adjournments. (is/ are)
23. Some Democrats on Capitol Hill have joined in the call for ..... *independent counsel* to investigate campaign fund raising.
24. Officials fear glass bottles could break or injure visitors, or, after the show, damage ..... . (*aircraft*)
25. Their *headquarters* ..... rich in symbolism. (to be)

***Exercise 6. Translate the following sentences into English.***

a)

1. Мне нужен совет в этом деле.
2. Почему вы пренебрегли его советами?
3. Многие из этих советов нам очень пригодились.
4. Все сведения были очень важные.
5. Мы получили такие же сведения.
6. Эти деньги не мои. Мои деньги в кошельке.
7. Сколько у тебя денег? Тебе хватит на покупку телефона? – У меня мало денег, их не хватит.
8. Его познания в этой области поразили нас.
9. Ваших знаний недостаточно, чтобы провести эту работу.
10. Все подготовительные работы для строительства стадиона закончены.
11. Какая интересная работа!
12. Какие новости?
13. Какая дождливая погода!
14. Эти новости уже всем известны.
15. Он сделал такие большие успехи в английском!
16. На следующем перекрестке поверните налево.

b)

1. Сейчас в любом магазине можно купить свежие фрукты различных сортов.
2. Фрукты в нашем саду уже созрели.
3. Какие из этих овец будут посланы на выставку?
4. Мои часы отстают; их нужно отдать в починку.
5. Мне очень нравятся эти часы. Где вы их купили?
6. Товар только что прибыл на станцию. Его разгрузят сегодня.
7. Лестница была очень крутая.
8. Франция славится своими винами.
9. В аквариуме было пять рыбок, одна из них золотая.
10. Рыбаки были довольны: они поймали много рыбы.
11. Произведения Пушкина переведены не только на европейские, но и на восточные языки.
12. Эта ваза — настоящее произведение искусства.
13. Содержание вашего сочинения не соответствует теме.
14. Мои попутчики были веселые и интересные люди.
15. Витрина нового магазина привлекала внимание всех прохожих.
16. Возьмите эти ножницы, они острые.
17. Мальчик вырос, и брюки стали ему коротки.
18. Он уложил в чемодан двое брюк, три рубашки, носовые платки, полдюжины носков, два полотенца и задумался, — что же еще нужно положить.
19. Они шли парами.
20. В коробке было шесть пар чулок.
21. Ураган нанес большой ущерб урожаю.
22. Столкновение произошло по вине нашего шофера, ему придется оплатить убытки.
23. У нее хорошие густые волосы.
24. Политика – не обязательно грязное дело.
25. Ваша политика не кажется мне вполне честной.

## THE CATEGORY OF CASE OF NOUNS

### *Exercise 1. Comment on the use of the Genitive Case.*

1. He would accept *his subordinate's work* without a word of appreciation. (Maugham)
2. Then he set about the *day's work*. (Maugham)
3. I was encouraged when, after Roger had proposed the guest of *honor's health*, Lufkin got up to reply. (Snow)
4. He could put his hand on any document that was needed, and he had at *his fingers' ends* all the regulations. (Maugham)
5. You know *my mother's ideas* as to the necessity of constant company for her friends. (Austen)
6. At last he could stand the silence no longer, and he made up his mind to go down to the *trader's*, a man named Jervis, who had a store about a mile away. (Maugham)
7. To the civil inquiries which then poured in, and amongst which she had the pleasure of distinguishing the most superior solicitude of *Mr. Bingley's*, she could not make a very favourable answer. (Austen)
8. In a few minutes the *doctor's wife* was able to take her into the *ladies' lavatory* to wash her face. (Maugham)
9. "Oh, no, not really," said Ann. "I'm rather on the *wives' side*." (Christie)
10. Don't keep coughing so, Kitty, for *heaven's sake*! (Austen)
11. There was *a moment's silence*. (Maugham)
12. I spotted the *bride's father's uncle's silk hat* on the seat of a straight chair across the room. (Salinger)
13. He started walking around the room again, picking up all my personal stuff and *Stradlater's*. (Salinger)
14. It was in *the last week's* "News of the World". (Christie)
15. Thereafter *Jane's narrative*, repeated only with little variation, sank into the equivalent of a part played on the stage. (Christie)
16. It was no exaggeration of *Syd's* when he said that Stella was a riot. (Maugham)
17. The child was *Cartright's*. Look at Olive: why, you saw the likeness herself. (Maugham)
18. I don't suppose he read a book from *year's end to year's end*. He was a typical public school-boy. (Maugham)

19. She wore *a man's silk dressing-gown* and on her head a bathing-cap. (Maugham)
20. "If they were in love with one another...why didn't they just bolt?" – "Yow could they? They wouldn't have had *a dog's chance*." (Maugham)
21. He talked little, but it was plain that he enjoyed *his wife's caustic humour*. (Maugham)
22. "Whose car was that?" – "*Ed Banky's*." (Salinger)
23. I've known of planters sleeping in the street because they hadn't the price of *a night's lodging*. (Maugham)
24. It appears that he was an old friend of *Bronson's*, they'd been at school together. (Maugham)
25. Something, perhaps, of such thoughts struggled through *Eva's mind*. But *a child's thoughts* are dim, undefined instincts; and in *Eva's noble nature* many such were yearning and working for which she had no power of utterance. (Stowe)
26. Mrs. Gardiner, to whom the chief of this news had been given before, in the course of *Jane and Elizabeth's correspondence* with her, made her sister a slight answer. (Austen)
27. She seemed to derive a rind of melancholy satisfaction from the accuracy of *her husband's prophesy*. (Christie)
28. For *goodness' sake* let's hope we get something out of the servants. (Christie)
29. She was also particularly glad to have the opportunity of talking to Henry Banks on the subject of *the school's future*. (Christie)
30. The gentleman called, for *convenience's sake* by us – Mr. Adam Goodman, is not known to you. (Christie)
31. *My father's opinion* of me does me the greatest honour. (Austen)
32. There are many reasons why a man notices *a girl's knees*. (Christie)
33. There is nothing that eases the burden of *a mother's life* more than to be permitted to unburden herself of the difficulties...which she has in dealing with her offspring. (Christie)
34. She saw it all in *her mind's eye*. (Christie)
35. "For I am good," said Hercule Poirot in a parenthesis," at putting myself into *other people's minds*. (Christie)
36. *Miss Kerr's* evidence was much the same as that of her friend. (Christie)

37. In a sense he lived in *a fool's paradise* – and yet it wasn't *a fool's paradise* because to him she was what he thought her. (Christie)
38. I thought it was an American gentleman *friend of Mr. Pace's*. (Christie)

***Exercise 2. Translate into English. Choose between the constructions N+N, N of N, N's+N.***

Вчерашняя встреча, воскресная газета, недельный отпуск, настольная лампа, стрелка часов, расстояние в две мили, трехчасовая поездка, дом моего отца, берег реки, сегодняшняя газета, садовый цветок, цветочный сад, детский велосипед, ножка стола, женский голос, коровье молоко, семейные отношения, нефтяной колодец, собачья жизнь, дом местного доктора, хозяин дома, встреча актрисы с режиссером, имя молодого человека, история нашей школы, название пьесы, докторская степень, самый большой город в Италии, верхняя часть страницы, результат футбольного матча, городской центр, хлопковая плантация, картофельный суп, солнечное затмение, сын моего старого друга.

***Exercise 3. Comment on the Nouns used in the Genitive.***

1. *A fortnight's* acquaintance is certainly very little. (Austen)
2. It is as often applied to feelings which arise from a half *hour's* acquaintance as to a real strong attachment. (Austen)
3. Agatha Christie achieved *Britain's* highest honour when she was made a Dame of the British Empire.
4. You must have a good *night's* rest. (Maugham)
5. Every object in the next *day's* journey was new and interesting to Elizabeth. (Austen)
6. *Elizabeth's* spirits were so high on the occasion that...she could not help asking him whether he intended to accept *Mr. Bingley's* invitation, and, if he did, whether he would think it proper to join in the *evening's* amusements. (Austen)
7. They were invited and engaged to dine at Longbourn in a few *days'* time. (Austen)
8. We're going to the South of France in six *weeks'* time. (Christie)
9. Bob frowned as he turned into *Ramat's* leading hotel. (Christie)
10. 'Do you know anything about gardening?' – "Quite a lot. I've got one of those gardening mothers. *England's* speciality." (Christie)

11. My assignment is in the nature of watching brief. Or was – until last night. Murder of a Game Mistress. Not quite in the *school's* curriculum. (Christie)
12. “You must admit they don’t look up too much, do they?” –“The *world's* famous men seldom do.” (Christie)
13. So you passed close by the *deceased's* seat? (Christie)
14. The friend, who, in a bored manner, was turning over the pages of a three *week's* old “Sketch”, replied uninterestedly. (Christie)
15. They were to leave the house without an *instant's* delay and go at once to the *river's* edge and go aboard a steamer that would be waiting there for them. (Buck)
16. Presently Rex was on his two *miles'* walk to Offendene. (Eliot)
17. Crime is the product of the *country's* social order. (Cronin)
18. He was still thinking of next *morning's* papers. (Snow)
19. As for Mr. Gale, I suggest that he meets us in, say, an *hour's* time. (Christie)
20. Well, look at this last coup, the million *dollars'* worth of Liberty Bonds which the London and Scottish Bank were sending to New York. (Christie)
21. Mr. Vavasour selected his nephew, who had occupied a position of trust in the Bank for many years and who was conversant with all the details of the *Bank's* dealings in New York, to make the trip. (Christie)
22. They could hardly have been hidden on board – and anyway we know they weren't, because they were offered for sale within half an hour of the *Olympia's* (a ship) arrival. (Christie)
23. Why, Missus could have a *month's* wages out of her for doing that. (Christie)
24. But we do not concern ourselves with him now, do we? He is *yesterday's* news.(Christie)
25. As Kelsey had said every *department's* technique varied a little. (Christie)

***Exercise 4. Differentiate between the Subjective Genitive and the Objective Genitive.***

1. From herself to Jane – from Jane to Bingley, her thoughts were in a line which soon brought to her recollection that *Mr.Darcy's explanation* there had been very insufficient. (Austen)
2. She felt that *Jane's feelings*, though fervent, were little displayed. (Austen)

3. But in spite of the certainty in which Elizabeth affected to place this point, as well as the still more interesting one of *Bingley's being withheld* from seeing Jane, she felt a solicitude on the subject. (Austen)
4. Miss Bennet accepted *her aunt's invitation* with pleasure. (Austen)
5. Bingley urged *Mr. Jones's being sent for* immediately. (Austen)
6. Since *her father's death*, her home has been London. (Austen)
7. *Mr. Darcy's behaviour* astonished and vexed her. (Austen)
8. She may have seen someone leaving the house on the night of *Miss Springer's murder*. (Christie)
9. *The doctor's examination* was brief. He said: "She's dead." (Christie)
10. *The Radical's real supporters* were the urban classes. (Galsworthy)
11. She knew nothing at all about *her mother's life* or business relations. (Christie)
12. She was relieved at the time that the child would not come under *her mother's influence*. (Christie)
13. *The criminal's arrest* is the first thing. (Christie)
14. But the doctor himself had been in no doubt about the reality of *his wife's suffering*. (Christie)

***Exercise 5. Differentiate between the Specifying Genitive and the Classifying Genitive.***

1. At the moment she was concentrating on being everything that a secretary to the headmistress of *a famous girls' school* should be. (Christie)
2. She read the start of *her daughter's essay*. (Christie)
3. On the opposite side of the gangway there was a good deal of chatter – a rather shrill, high-pitched *woman's voice* dominating it. *Jane's lips* twisted slightly. And then *a man's voice*, foreign, polite. (Christie)
4. Contrary to the prevalent superstition *Jane's beginner's luck* had been bad. (Christie)
5. You will have that list made – the list of *the passengers' belongings?* (Christie)
6. Those who wrote for *women's papers* put: "Lady Horbury wore one of the new collegian hats and fox furs." (Christie)
7. His gaze rested with a far from satisfied expression on *the little Belgian's long mustaches*. (Christie)
8. The papers were kept else where. In *madam's bedroom*, perhaps? (Christie)



9. Her skin was as dry as *a child's* with fever. (Green)
10. *A lady's imagination* is very rapid; it jumps from admiration to love, from love to matrimony, in a moment. (Austen)
11. Jane blushed slightly at the earnestness of *the young man's tone*. (Christie)
12. Her clothes were well cut but rather like *a man's*. (Christie)
13. Nasty helpless feeling you have in *a dentist's chair*. (Christie)
14. Japp was shown into *Doctor Briant's consulting room*. (Christie)
15. You realized that there might be a large fortune to be got. It appealed to *your gambler's nature*. (Christie)
16. Her two children died in infancy, and she inherited all *her husband's property*. (Christie)
17. The postmistress hurried out with parcels; parcels connected with the shop side of her business, for the post office also dealt with sweets, cheap books and *children's toy*. (Christie)
18. Inside the parcel was *Mrs. Spenlow's new green winter dress*. (Christie)
19. I help Arthurine study for *her driver's test*. (McMillan)

***Exercise 6. Comment on the Use of the Absolute Genitive.***

1. The two youngest of the family, Catherine and Lydia, were particularly frequent in these attentions; their minds were more vacant than their *sister's*. (Austen)
2. In front of *St. Paul's* he stopped to buy the most gentlemanly of the evening papers. (Galsworthy)
3. He entered *Gaves and Cortegal's* therefore, on the morning of 9 November to buy a certain diamond brooch. (Galsworthy)
4. A movement of *Catherine's* relieved me a little presently. (Bronte)
5. It was at *Sir William Lucas's* where a large party was assembled. (Austen)
6. 'I've no particular loyalty to Mrs. Leidner', said Miss Johnson dryly. '*Dr. Leidner's* is a different matter.' (Christie)
7. Would they prefer a reign of terror like *my grandfather's*? (Christie)
8. All the enthusiasts wanted to show their own pictures but to get out of being forced to see *other people's*. (Christie)
9. A man stepped out from *a tobacconist's* and waved to them, and the car slid to the kerb and stopped. (Green)
10. 'Any prints on it?' – 'Yes. *The dead woman's*.' (Christie)

11. It's the Emir Ibrahim, Miss Bulstrode. He's arrived at *Claridge's* and would like to take Shaista out tomorrow. (Christie)
12. A little elderly man in large mustaches and an egg-shaped head was politely moving himself and his belongings from the seat corresponding to *Jane's*. (Christie)
13. The girl at my *hairdresser's* is the girl who'll tell you all about it if you ask her nicely. (Christie)
14. "Mama", cried Lydia, "my aunt says that Colonel Forster and Captain Carter do not go so often to *Miss Watson's* as they did when they first came. (Austen)
15. Their brother is a pleasant, gentlemanlike man – he is a great friend of *Darcy's*. (Austen)
16. "Anyone can have a brown face," said Gladys. "It may be the seaside or it may be out of a bottle – two and eleven pence at *the chemist's*. (Christie)
17. "Do you, by any chance, remember the name of the shop?" – "Well," said Mr. Clancy, "it might have been *Absolom's* – or there's Mitchell and Smith." (Christie)
18. A pair of revolvers of *my husband's* were mounted upon the wall. (Christie)
19. But I'd just stepped out to *the butcher's*. (Christie)
20. "Have you seen this compact before?" - "Yes, sir. I observed this person, Nurse Harrison, purchase it at *Woolworth's* on Friday the 18<sup>th</sup>." (Christie)

***Exercise 7. Translate into English using the Group Genitive.***

Мать Джона и Мери; отцы Питера и Джека; романы Ильфа и Петрова; стихи Байрона и Шелли; речь министра иностранных дел; времена Ивана Грозного; жизнь великого поэта России; полуторачасовая прогулка; политика Соединенных Штатов; трагедия Гамлета, принца Датского; сын человека, которого мы встретили вчера; комната мамы и папы; расстояние в милю или две; отъезд почетного гостя; дела других людей.

***Exercise 8. Explain the use of N+N, N of N, N's N structures.***

1. There was a luggage shop, the window display a single suitcase with a fuchsia silk scarf draped over it. (Parker)
2. You may be sure the uncle's will would be in his favour. (Christie)
3. The jealousy of wives is proverbial. (Christie)

4. And when he set forth by Underground to Victoria Station he received a fresh impetus towards the renewal of his married life from the account in his evening paper of a fashionable divorce suit. (Galsworthy)
5. She is a television money machine.(Parker)
6. His nephew was a trusted official of the Bank. (Christie)
7. As we talked, we neared a door that opened on the road; and my young lady, lightening into sunshine again, climbed up, and seated herself on the top of the wall, reaching over to gather some hips that bloomed scarlet on the summit branches of the wild rose trees, shadowing the highway side: the lower fruit had disappeared, but only birds could touch the upper, except from Cathy's present station. (Bronte)
8. It was the cat's milk, of course, and he put out his hand amicably to stroke the creature. (Galsworthy)
9. The crew was spread out, down parkas hanging from chair backs, down vests tossed on the floor, hunched over trays eating. (Parker)
10. He noticed the hand of one of the two sisters, a long claw-like hand... (Christie)
11. The surface here and there was sandy and in places you could see quite plainly the mark of a bicycle wheel. (Maugham)
12. Be so good as to direct me to the artistes' dressing room. (Maugham)
13. In course of time he had cut roads through the country joining the villages together, and it was to this that a great part of the island's prosperity was due. (Maugham)
14. He rejoiced in his disposition of them so that they were not only convenient, but showed off the beauties of the island which his soul loved. (Maugham)
15. Though Wickham had been little there since the death of Darcy's father, five years before, it was yet in his power to give her fresher intelligence of her former friends. (Austen)
16. Bronson knew that he could not be the father of the child. (Maugham)
17. He swallowed his cheekful of burger and wiped the bottom half of his face with a paper napkin. (Grafton)
18. Winifred had heard from Val that there had been a rag and a bonfire on Guy Fawkes' day at Oxford. (Galsworthy)

***Exercise 9. Translate into Russian the set expressions with the Genitive Case Forms.***

At arm's length, at a stone's throw, from year's end to year's end, to one's heart's content, for mercy's sake, for goodness' sake, for appearance's sake, at one's wit's end, within a hair's breadth of smth, at a foot's pace, for convenience's sake, in one's mind's eye, a pin's head, at one's finger's end, out of harm's way, duty's call, a needle's end, at death's door, at a snail's pace, at the water's edge, for one's honor's sake, a fool's paradise; a mare's nest; in heaven's name.

**The Use of Articles and Attributes with Nouns in the Genitive Case**

- When the Genitive is used in the meaning of belonging (possession) or in the meaning of the subject of the action, all that stands before the noun in the Genitive refers to this noun (and not to the following head noun): 'the young man's son' (= the young man has a son) denotes that the man is young (not his son); 'some child's cries' = 'some child cried' (not 'some cries'). Whatever refers to the head noun must be placed after the possessive: 'the man's young son' = the man has a young son. Since no articles or pronouns can be used after the noun in the Genitive, an Absolute Genitive is used if we need some determiner before the head-noun: 'a friend of Peter's', 'that friend of Peter's', 'some friends of Peter's'. That is also the reason why we say 'Pushkin's last poems', without an article and with 'last' placed after the possessive (otherwise 'the' and 'last' would refer to the proper name). Note 'the great Pushkin's poems', where 'the' and 'great' both refer to the proper name (the article appears due to the use of an attribute with the proper noun). Note also 'yesterday's sad news' where the absence of article is due to the peculiarities of the word 'yesterday'.
- When there are attributive relations (the Genitive is used in its qualitative meaning) all that stands before the Genitive refers to the following head noun (not to the possessive noun): 'a children's shop' = 'a shop for children'. This happens because 'children's' here is very much like a qualitative adjective (cf. 'a childish joke'). In this meaning no attribute can be placed after the possessive; hence 'a new children's shop' (= a new shop for children), where the article and attribute both 'jump over' the possessive noun to refer to the head word.
- When the article means 'one', it refers to the possessive noun denoting a measure: 'a mile's distance' = one mile's distance; 'an hour's work' = work for one hour. In all other cases the article refers to the head noun, as does the attribute: 'a pleasant two hours' walk' = a pleasant walk for two hours. Sometimes, however homonymous character of such structures makes it

difficult to determine the precise relationship; thus, in ‘Now you must have a good night’s sleep’, the attribute ‘good’ may be referred either to ‘sleep’ or to ‘night’. The article in such phrases can also be omitted (‘after two hours’ walk’).

- Note also a change of number forms in phrases like ‘a woman’s hat’ (= for a woman, i.e. for one woman) — but: ‘two women’s hats’ (= two hats for women, not for one woman). As different from that we say: ‘an illustrated women’s magazine’ (for women as a class, not for one person as with personal belongings like ‘hat’, ‘coat’).
- In phrases like ‘goat’s (cow’s) milk’ no article is used as no individual animal is meant (the possible spelling is ‘cows’ milk’). On the other hand, in ‘a goat’s head appeared in the window’ we mean one particular individual animal (‘the head of a goat’). Note also ambiguous cases in ‘another woman’s hat’, which may mean either ‘the hat belonging to another woman’ or ‘one more hat designed to be worn by a woman’. In real speech such ambiguous phrases are usually avoided.

***Exercise 10. Study the following contexts. Paraphrase the possessives so as to define the type of relations between the constituents and determine to which word the dependent elements refer.***

1. Therefore, not to mention his clothes, which had seen *three months’ service* in mire and dust, and his thick uncombed hair, the surface of his face and hands was dismally beclouded. (E. Bronte)
2. The library had the look of *a private men’s club*. (S. Grafton)
3. *Three minutes’ delay* will render it involuntary and ignominious. (E. Bronte)
4. That was his most perfect idea of *heaven’s happiness*. (E. Bronte)
5. Since early morning, she had been busy ordering her own small affairs; and now, attired in her new black frock poor thing – *her aunt’s death* impressed her with no definite sorrow – she obliged me, by constant worrying, to walk with her down through the grounds to meet them. (E. Bronte)
6. There was *half a second’s silence* while she processed the information. (S. Grafton)
7. Catherine had kept up her acquaintance with the Lintons since her *five weeks’ residence* among them. (E. Bronte)
8. Everything, in fact, was driving towards the simple solution of *Irene’s return*. (John Galsworthy)
9. An early ride on such a beautiful morning is much preferable to *an hour’s more sleep*. (E. Bronte)

10. About twelve o'clock, that night, was born the Catherine you saw at Wuthering Heights: *a puny, seven months' child*; and two hours after the mother died, having never recovered sufficient consciousness to miss Heathcliff, or know Edgar. (E. Bronte)
11. Let a man do *a man's job*. (Terry McMillan)
12. And she has fasted ever since the day before *yesterday's walk*, from sorrow and rage that I dispatched her out of your society under the idea of its being unacceptable. (E. Bronte)
13. At this point of *the housekeeper's story*, she chanced to glance towards the time-piece over the chimney; and was in amazement on seeing the minute-hand measure half-past one. (E. Bronte)
14. You could buy a blue margarita on *ten seconds' notice* down here. (R.B. Parker)
15. Her companion rose up, but he hadn't time to express his feelings further, for *a horse's feet* were heard on the flags, and having knocked gently, young Linton entered, his face brilliant with delight at the unexpected summons he had received. (E. Bronte)
16. The poor creature was threatened, or coxed, into that act during *her week's absence*, when his uncle died. (E. Bronte)
17. He saw I knew naught about it, and he told how a gentleman and lady had stopped to have *a horse's shoe* fastened at *a blacksmith's shop*, two miles out of Gimmerton, not very long after midnight. (E. Bronte)
18. Was Catherine obedient to *her father's commands*? (E. Bronte)
19. Doctor Diver began *his morning's inspection*. (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
20. I'd been in *this man's company* thirty seconds or less and I'd already developed an aversion to him. (S. Grafton)
21. They are *dove's eyes – angel's!* (E. Bronte)
22. 'She is *her brother's heir*, is she not?' he asked, after a brief silence. (E. Bronte)
23. 'Remain where you are, Catherine,' he said; without any anger in his voice, but with much sorrowful despondency. 'I shall not stay. I am neither come to wrangle nor be reconciled; but I wish just to learn whether, after *this evening's events*, you intend to continue your intimacy with –' (E. Bronte)
24. I listened to detect *a woman's voice* in the house, and filled the interim with wild regrets and dismal anticipations, which, at last, spoke audibly in irrepressible sighing and weeping. (E. Bronte)

25. Besides, he's mine, and I want the triumph of seeing my descendant fairly lord of their estates: my child hiring their children to till *their fathers' lands* for wages. (E. Bronte)
26. 'How long am I to wait?' I continued, disregarding *the woman's interference*. (E. Bronte)
27. I must confess, that if I had been in *the young lady's place*, I would, at least, have swept the hearth, and wiped the tables with a duster. (E. Bronte)
28. He had disliked the look of *the men's clothes*, the closed-in cabs, the theatres which looked like beehives, the Galleries which smelled of beeswax. (John Galsworthy)
29. That's *the boys' club*. (S. Grafton)
30. A charming introduction to *a hermit's life!* (E. Bronte)
31. He'd crush you like *a sparrow's egg*, Isabella, if he found you a troublesome charge. (E. Bronte)

**Exercise 11. Fill in the gaps in these sentences with a, an, the or nothing (-). Put the adjectives in brackets in the right place.**

1. On the day succeeding ..... *Isabella's* ..... *visit*, I had no opportunity of speaking to my master: he shunned conversation, and was fit for discussing nothing. (unexpected) (E. Bronte)
2. She wrote to inform her brother of the probably conclusion of ..... *four months' indisposition* under which she had suffered; and entreated him to come to her, if possible; for she had much to settle, and she wished to bid him adieu, and deliver Linton safely into his hands. (E. Bronte)
3. From what I'd seen of her, she tended to be humorless, but with Guy she'd now added a grace note of resentment, reflecting ..... *family's* ..... *attitude*. (general) (S. Grafton)
4. 'I performed the duty of a faithful servant in telling you, and I have got ..... *servant's* ..... *wages!*' (faithful) (E. Bronte)
5. I could envision the day when this house would be sold to ..... *boys'* ..... *school* and the smell of cruciform vegetables would overpower all else. (private) (S. Grafton)
6. My master, perceiving that she would not take his word for *her*..... *uncle-in-law's* ..... *disposition*, gave a hasty sketch of his conduct to Isabella and the manner in which Wuthering Heights became his property. (evil) (E. Bronte)
7. Then he drew her to him, and asked if she knew why he had concealed ..... *Linton's* ..... *neighbourhood* from her? (near) (E. Bronte)

8. She could not bear the notion which I had put into her head of ..... *Mr. Linton's..... resignation*. (philosophical) (E. Bronte)
9. She taught French and Italian at ..... *girls' ..... academy* in Bridgeport, Connecticut. (private) (S. Grafton)
10. We're ..... *person's ..... clinic*. (rich) (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
11. Hareton was impressed with a wholesome terror of encountering either *his ..... beast's ..... fondness* or his madman's rage; for in one he ran a chance of being squeezed and kissed to death, and in the other of being flung into the fire, or dashed against the wall; and the poor thing remained perfectly quiet wherever I chose to put him. (wild) (E. Bronte)
12. I took my hat, and, after ..... *four miles' walk*, arrived at Heathcliff's garden gate just in time to escape the first feathery flakes of snow-shower. (E. Bronte)
13. I say we go out at dawn and make the dive anyway. Dammit man, if that gold is reachable we could raise a few bars and be on our way. A million – two million – for ..... *morning's work*. (Jack Higgins)
14. After ..... *two hours' ..... sleep* Dick felt renewed. (train) (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
15. She wanted ..... *Consul's ..... address*. (home) (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
16. Last winter, I did not think, at ..... *twelve months'..... end*, I should be amusing a stranger to the family with relating them! (another) (E. Bronte)
17. We walked to ..... *ladies' room*. (R.B. Parker)
18. 'Nelly, do you never dream queer dreams?' she said, suddenly, after ..... *minutes' ..... reflection*. (some) (E. Bronte)
19. I engaged to carry a letter from him to my mistress; and should she consent, I promised to let him have intelligence of ..... *Linton's ..... absence* from home, when he might come, and get in as he was able... (next) (E. Bronte)
20. 'Isabella and Edgar Linton talked of calling this afternoon,' she said, at the conclusion of ..... *minute's silence*. (E. Bronte)
21. 'Have you nothing to show your cousin, anywhere about; not even a rabbit or ..... *weasel's nest*?' (E. Bronte)
22. I took ..... *year's leave* because I got a grant to research and run an outreach program for adolescent boys. (Terry McMillan)
23. Yet, it was ..... *man's world*. (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
24. I'd as soon put that little canary into the park on ..... *winter's day*, as recommend you to bestow your heart on him! (E. Bronte)
25. I stayed on as housekeeper at ..... *brother's..... request*. (your) (S. Grafton)



26. I filled out a form, asking for ..... *records' search*. (S. Grafton)
27. '..... *smiths' ..... hammers* are beating in my head!' (a thousand) (E. Bronte)
28. Isabella and he had had ..... *hour's interview*, during which he tried to elicit from her some sentiment of proper horror for Heathcliff's advances: but he could make nothing of her evasive replies, and was obliged to close the examination unsatisfactorily, adding, however, a solemn warning, that if she were so insane as to encourage that worthless suitor, it would dissolve all bonds of relationship between herself and him. (E. Bronte)
29. He (Soames) had never been a peacock like that fellow Dartie, or fancied himself ..... *woman's man*, but he had a certain belief in his own appearance. (John Galsworthy)
30. I wish ..... *P.I.'s job* were half as easy as they make it look on television. (S. Grafton) (P.I. = private investigator)
31. I know it's not up to me to solve ..... *world's problems*. (S. Grafton)

## THE CATEGORY OF GENDER OF NOUNS

➤ **Gender** is a lexical category as there are no grammatical endings to mark this category. With living beings gender is distinguished semantically (due to the meaning of nouns); by correlation with personal pronouns (he, she, it).

### **Exercise 1. Give the corresponding female/ male form of the following nouns:**

God, hero, groom, sorcerer, widow, bachelor, policeman, duke, pea-hen, sultan, prophet, bull whale, lad, host, lion, tiger, he-wolf, manservant, tom-cat, boy-friend, emperor, female elephant, jack-ass, billy-goat, heir, fiancé, earl, tsar, gentleman, monk, goose, pig, ram, stallion, masseur, usher, master, female nurse, priest, wrestler, duck, fox, deer, signor, manager.

➤ Traditionally **names of countries** correspond to the feminine gender (*England and her people; America = she*), their official names, or geographical notions – to the neuter gender (*The United Kingdom and its people; The continent of Australia: its climate and natural resources*).

➤ When personification takes place (in fables, poetry), irrespective of sex distinctions, the pronoun 'he' would be used for a strong, active, man-like creature, 'she' (often with endearment) – for a feeble, tender, woman-like creature; thus, in English folklore **The Sun** is 'he' and **the Moon** is 'she'; **Wind, Ocean, River** = 'he' (cf. 'Old Man River', in a folksong about the Mississippi); **Earth** = 'she'.

➤ When **abstract notions** are personified the masculine gender is given to nouns suggesting such ideas as strength, fierceness, while the feminine

is associated with the idea of gentleness, beauty: **Anger, Death, Fear, War, Love, Passion** = 'he'; **Hope, Mercy, Spring, Peace, Kindness, Dawn** = 'she';

➤ Any animal in a fairy-tale (Dog, Fish, Horse, Cat, Mouse) is commonly a 'he', unless the opposite sex is specified (Lioness = 'she') or woman-like behaviour is stressed: the notorious Fox and Crow in Aesop's fable are respectively 'he' (a cunning, resourceful person) and 'she' (coquettish and light-minded).

➤ When the sex of the animals is not indicated by the noun, nouns denoting the larger and stronger animals are generally associated with the masculine gender, nouns denoting the smaller and weaker animals – with the feminine gender: **elephant, dog, eagle, horse** = 'he'; **cat, hare, parrot** = 'she'; But: **canary** = *he*, **fly** = *he*.

➤ A **boat/ ship** of any kind is traditionally referred to as 'she'; so can a **car/ carriage/ coach** be referred to by its owner, or **an airplane** by its pilot, when they speak affectionately (E.g. 'I'll go and start *her* now'); somebody else's vehicle, in a neutral context, is 'it' (E.g. 'I saw a **car** at the curb; *its* window was broken').

➤ Practically anything with which a person operates and which he therefore regards as obedient to his will, can be affectionately referred to as 'she' (E.g. 'I am trying to move **this cupboard** to the other wall. Just give me a hand with *her*, will you?')

**Exercise 2. Fill in a personal or possessive pronoun corresponding in gender to the word in bold type.**

1. The interesting and inspiring thing about **America** is that ..... asks nothing for ..... except what ..... has a right to ask for humanity itself. (Woodrow Wilson).
2. 'But **the fox** might come again,' Benny said slowly. 'Last time ..... killed twelve chickens.' (Jack Higgins)
3. If **England** treats ..... criminals the way ..... has treated me, ..... doesn't deserve to have any (Wilde)
4. When did **the USA** first send ..... ambassador to Russia?
5. One three-month-old **baby** managed to talk .....parents into sending Santa a letter.
6. **The boat** was very flat, the central section including the wheelhouse rising up from the deck three quarters of the way along. ....was about five hundred feet in length. (Jack Higgins)
7. One's days are too brief to take the burden of another's sorrows on one's shoulders. Each man lives his own life, and pays his own price for living it.

- The only pity is that one has to pay so often for a single fault. One has to pay over and over again, indeed. In her dealings with man **Destiny** never closes ..... accounts. (O. Wilde)
8. Intellectually I know that **America** is no better than any other country; emotionally I know ..... is better than every country. (Sinclair Lewis)
  9. ‘Do you have children?’ Melanie Joan said.  
‘No,’ I said. ‘I have **a dog.**’  
‘Will that be a problem?’  
‘I’ll miss .....,’ I said. ‘But ..... can stay with ..... father.’  
(Robert B. Parker)
  10. And when **Death** at last lays ..... icy hand upon you, you will share my Kingdom.
  11. **The baby** was lying on ..... back in ..... crib, perfectly content.
  12. I heard Ryan say to Mr. Bell **the Irish Rose (= the boat)** is well on ..... way by now, so we’ll see ..... Friday morning. (Jack Higgins)
  13. **Our country.** In ..... intercourse with foreign nations may ..... always be in the right; but our country right or wrong! (Stephen Decatur)
  14. You know that **cat**, ..... scratched me.
  15. One night there flew over the city a little **Swallow.** ..... friends went away to Egypt six weeks before. But ..... stayed behind, because ..... was in love with the most beautiful Reed. (O. Wilde)
  16. Only **the dog’s** determination to be reunited with ..... master kept ..... going.
  17. **The Earth** is going to get married, and this is .....bridal dress. (O. Wilde)
  18. It was winter, and a night of bitter cold. The snow lay thick upon the ground. And upon the branches of the trees the frost kept snapping the little twigs on either side of them, as they passed. And when they came to **the mountain torrent**, ..... was hanging motionless in the air, for the Ice-King had kissed ..... (O. Wilde)
  19. ‘Ugh!’ growled **the Wolf**, as ..... ran through the wood with ..... tail between ..... legs, ‘this is perfectly terrible weather. Why doesn’t the Government look to it?’ (O. Wilde)
  20. They were terribly frightened, because they knew that **the Snow** is cruel to those who sleep in ..... arms. (O. Wilde)
  21. So **the Star-Child** was brought up with the children of the Woodcutter. .... sat at the same board with them, and was their playmate. (O. Wilde)

22. Then came the turn of **the Sun**. At first ..... beamed gently upon the traveller, who soon unclasped his cloak and walked on with it hanging loosely about his shoulders: then ..... shone forth in ..... full strength, and the man, before he had gone many steps, was glad to throw his coat right off and complete his journey more lightly clad. (Aesop's Fables)
23. **The North Wind** had the first try; and, gathering up all ..... force for the attack, .....came whirling furiously down upon the man, and caught up his cloak as though ..... would wrest it from him by one single effort: but the harder ..... blew, the more closely the man wrapped it round himself. (Aesop's Fables)
24. **Love** is wiser than **Philosophy**, though ..... is wise, and mightier than **Power**, though ..... is mighty. .... wings are flame-coloured, and ..... body is coloured like a flame. .... lips are sweet as honey, and ..... breath is like frankincense. (O. Wilde)
25. Then the Nightingale gave one last burst of music. **The white Moon** heard it, and ..... forgot the dawn, and still remained in the sky. (O. Wilde)

## THE PRONOUN

*Exercise 1. Point out the pronouns in the following sentences; define the class each belongs to, comment on their grammatical distinctions.*

1. I myself had been the first sufferer from the disease.(Christie)
2. She seemed to be the perfectly normal English girl, with high spirits, a great desire to enjoy herself, and an excellent temper. (Maugham)
3. The father and mother seem very well satisfied with one another's company. (Maugham)
4. She is a most charming young lady indeed. Lady Catherine herself says so. (Austen)
5. She had none of the determination that gave her mother's face so much character, but resembled her father; she had his dark eyes and slightly aquiline nose, and his look of rather weak good nature. (Maugham)
6. And you think this man is the one who has taken the swim-suit? (Chase)
7. They looked at each other, embarrassed. "What are you doing?" said Mrs. Upjohn, advancing a little closer. (Christie)
8. Will you look around this room and tell me if you see that person here now? (Christie)
9. It's a little like her – but I don't think it's her. (Christie)

10. It was I who taught your Aunt Maureen to make an omelette. (Christie)
11. It was strictly forbidden for the girls to go into each other's rooms, and the only mistress who did so was Miss Johnson. (Christie)
12. "What are you waiting for?" – "For the Olympia (a ship). She is due on her return trip from New York on Tuesday. (Christie)
13. They reappear in New York a half hour after the Olympia gets in, and according to one man, whom nobody listens to, actually before she gets in. The Gigantic leaves Southampton on the same day as the Olympia, and she holds the record to the Atlantic. (Christie)
14. Were those two on good terms with each other? (Christie)
15. I don't think anyone in the hotel heard anything. (Christie)
16. You did not see anything in anybody's hand? (Christie)
17. In any case, he had been facing the other way towards the front car. He had heard nothing – no cry or exclamation. No one had come down the car except the stewards. (Christie)
18. It's their job more than ours. (Christie)
19. What did you think of us all? (Christie)
20. Meekness doesn't pay in this life, but I don't think we're either of us troubled by too much of that. (Christie)
21. But my ideas are running in a slightly different channel than yours. (Christie)
22. Everyone's eyes would at once be drawn to the window. Everyone would have his attention fixed on a certain point. A man in such a moment might whip out a dagger and stab another man, and nobody would see him do it. (Christie)
23. Did either of you two notice a wasp flying about the plane? (Christie)
24. Well, that will be all for now. (Christie)
25. That's right. That's when I took her her coffee. (Christie)
26. I mean, blowpipes and poisoned darts in an aeroplane – well, it insults one's intelligence.
27. "But I hope there is no strong attachment on either side," said Jane. "I am sure there is not on his." (Austen)
28. As soon as all had eaten...the carriage was ordered; and the whole party, with all their boxes, workbags and parcels...were seated in it. (Austen)
29. Both these people were resolved to treat Mr. Poly very well, and to help his exceptional incompetence in every possible way. (Wells)

30. There is nothing for any of us to do. (Snow)
31. She hesitated a moment, and then sat down beside me, and laid her hand on mine. (Dickens)
32. He seemed to get prouder and prouder over each item of his own deficiency. (Leacock).
33. What was in this girl that reminded him of that one with whom he had lived but two years, and mourned fifteen? (Galsworthy)
34. It would take me several weeks to recoup from the wheel once I had got rid of O'Brian and the chances were that his successor would find out what was going on at the nightclub. (Chase)

### **PERSONAL PRONOUNS**

**PERSONAL PRONOUNS** have the following grammatical categories:

- person (first, second, third);
- number (singular, plural);
- gender in the third person singular (masculine, feminine, neuter);
- case (nominative, objective).

***Exercise 2. Insert the proper form of the personal pronoun in brackets and comment on its grammatical categories.***

1. I had turned and faced (he). He was taller than (I).
2. I only mean I'm sorry the captain's (I).
3. He'll be between (you) and (I), anyway.
4. It was (he) before whom she felt defeat.
5. It was (she) who asked the next question.
6. It's (they) whom I pity desperately.
7. 'She's better at it than (we) are,' said Nora.
8. It was (I) not Martin, who had insisted on seeing (he) that night – because I wanted his support.
9. I recalled, too, there had been some talk between Tom Wells and (she).
10. 'Who is it?' '(I). It's (I).'
11. Now here you are, safe and sound. And you have your home and Eliza and (he).
12. This is (I) who can help you.
13. Time for you and (I) to talk a little business. (S. Sheldon)

14. 'This is called detecting,' I said. 'I'm trying to find out who murdered your stunt double, in the hopes that I can dissuade (he), or (she), from murdering (you).' 'Her?' 'Could be a (she), couldn't it?' (R.B. Parker)
15. 'Well, I cried last night,' he returned, 'and I had more reason to cry than (she).' (E. Bronte)
16. 'To get rid of (I), answer my question,' persevered Mr. Linton. (E. Bronte)
17. Isabella and (he) had had an hour's interview, during which he tried to elicit from her some sentiment of proper horror for Heathcliff's advances. (E. Bronte)
18. 'You and (I),' he said, 'have each a great debt to settle with the man out yonder!' (E. Bronte)
19. She was older than (I) was, with good cheekbones and lovely skin. (Robert B. Parker)
20. 'What frightened you?'  
'I don't know. Maybe it's (I).'
21. 'No,' I said. 'It's not (you).'
22. So may be it's (I), John Isidore said to himself.
23. She's as bad as (I) and you!
24. You are closer to death than (I).
25. 'Who told him?' '(I).'
26. 'Well, it was late, and (I) and my friend Bob, we'd been to a game.'
27. We've got a bond in common, you and (I).
28. The ski instructor didn't actually ski any better than (I).
29. 'Who's there?' 'It's (we).'
30. It's (they) who asked for the music to be turned down.
31. You and (I) are both invited to the pro-celebrity golf match, if you fancy it.
32. They are sending the new consignment over for Tom and (I) to check
33. Look what I've done! Silly (I)!
34. Lucky old (he)!

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

**POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS** have the following grammatical categories:

- person (first, second, third);
- number (singular, plural);
- gender in the third person singular (masculine, feminine, neuter);

They may be used in *the conjoint form (as determiners)* or *absolute form (as substitutes, replacers)*.

***Exercise 3. Choose the appropriate form of the possessive pronoun and comment on its grammatical categories.***

1. I went (my, mine) way, and she went (her, hers).
2. Tolland's eyes held (her, hers) for a long moment. (D. Brown)
3. What was this experiment of (your, yours)?
4. He slipped his arm in (her, hers).
5. From this point onward (their, theirs) story comes in two versions, (my, mine) and (her, hers).
6. The Minister's room was only two doors from (my, mine).
7. 'That thought is not (me, mine),' he said to himself quickly.
8. Where's (your, yours) seat? I shall go to (my, mine).
9. Call me what you like. You have chosen (your, yours) part, we have chosen (our, ours). (John Galsworthy)
10. His nature was harder than most of (their, theirs).
11. I thought it over aloud, in my master's presence; walking straight from (her, hers) room to his, and relating the whole story. (E. Bronte)
12. 'Oh, for mercy's sake,' interrupted the mistress, stamping her foot, 'for mercy's sake, let us hear no more of it now! Your cold blood cannot be worked into a fever: (your, yours) veins are full of ice water; but (my, mine) are boiling, and the sight of such chillness makes them dance.' (E. Bronte)
13. I took (her, hers) hand in (my, mine), and bid (her, hers) be composed. (E. Bronte)
14. Sitting close to Tolland now, Rachel was surprised to feel (his, her) hand gently slip into (her, hers). (D. Brown)
15. '...and this – I should know it among a thousand – it's a lapwing's. Bonny bird; wheeling over our heads in the middle of the moor. It wanted to get to



(it, its) nest, for the clouds had touched the swells, and it felt rain coming.’  
(E. Bronte)

16. ‘You’ve a nice house, Joseph,’ I could not refrain from observing, ‘and pleasant inmates; and I think the concentrated essence of all the madness in the world took up its abode in my brain the day I linked (my, mine) fate with (their, theirs)!’ (E. Bronte)

**Exercise 4. Choose between the definite article and the possessive pronoun. Explain your choice.**

1. ‘Hi, Mom,’ he says, kissing me on ..... *cheek*. (Terry McMillan)
2. And he took ..... *wife* in ..... *arms*, and looked at her with anguish. (E. Bronte)
3. Mr. Edgar’s coldness depressed me exceedingly; and all the way from the Grange I puzzled ..... *brains* how to put more heart into what he said, when I repeated it; and how to soften his refusal of even a few lines to console Isabella. (E. Bronte)
4. I tapped her carefully on ..... *shoulder*.
5. I didn’t feel as if I were in the company of a creature of my own species: it appeared that he would not understand, though I spoke to him; so I stood off, and held ..... *tongue*, in great perplexity. (E. Bronte)
6. ... after the struggle, he trembled, in spite of himself, to ..... *very finger-ends*. (E. Bronte)
7. Ryan kissed her on ..... *cheek*. (Jack Higgins)
8. Hareton, during the discussion, stood with ..... *hands* in his pockets, too awkward to speak; though he looked as if he did not relish my intrusion. (E. Bronte)
9. I shook her warmly by ..... *hand*.
10. Mrs Heathcliff was seated by the bedside, with ..... *hands* folded on ..... *knees*. (E. Bronte)
11. He plucked Soames *by* ..... *sleeve*. (John Galsworthy)
12. ‘I didn’t touch you, you lying creature!’ cried she, ..... *fingers* tingling to repeat the act, and ..... *ears* red with rage. (E. Bronte)
13. I feel a pain in ..... *neck* whenever I lift heavy objects.
14. She stamped ..... *foot*, wavered a moment, and then, irresistibly impelled by the naughty spirit within her, slapped me on ..... *cheek* a stinging blow that filled both eyes with water. (E. Bronte)
15. The youth was paralysed after being shot in ..... *leg*.

16. At last he placed ..... *hat* on ..... *head*, and walked grumbling forth. (E. Bronte)
17. ‘She has blood on ..... *lips!*’ he said, shuddering. (E. Bronte)
18. I incautiously gave the account aloud, and she heard me; for she started up – ..... *hair* flying over ..... *shoulders*, ..... *eyes* flashing, the muscles of ..... *neck and arms* standing out preternaturally. (E. Bronte)
19. The Duchess patted her on ..... *head*.
20. ‘You are talking in ..... *sleep!*’ (E. Bronte)
21. He took her by ..... *hand* and led her into the next room.

### SELF-PRONOUNS

**SELF-PRONOUNS** have the following grammatical categories:

- person (first, second, third);
- number (singular, plural);
- gender in the third person singular (masculine, feminine, neuter).

**SELF-PRONOUNS** may function as:

- **reflexive**: have their own syntactic function in the sentence – subject, predicative, object, attribute; adverbial modifier (cannot be dropped out from the sentence without destroying its meaning)
- **emphatic**: function in the sentence for emphasis as apposition to nouns, pronouns they emphasize (can be dropped out from the sentence without destroying its meaning). Emphatic pronouns may be used to emphasize that the subject caused a certain action. Compare: *He got arrested.*// *He got **himself** arrested* (= he did something to cause it). They may function with a meaning similar to ‘*also*.’ E.g. John said he was feeling ill. I was feeling pretty bad *myself*.

**Exercise 5. Point out the reflexive and emphatic pronouns. State their functions. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Robert set *himself* four drawings per week.
2. Leidner *himself* is a delightful fellow – so modest and unassuming.
3. James *himself* had given him his first brief.
4. She had taught Holly to speak French like *herself*.
5. There was a frame and in it a photograph of *herself* as a little girl.
6. They *themselves* were longing to ask Soames how Irene would take the result.

7. His eyes reconcentrated *themselves* quickly on the button-hook.
8. I'll see him *myself* to-morrow.
9. If June did not like this, she could have an allowance and live by *herself*.
10. She wrote the words to them *herself*, and other poems.
11. I thought to *myself* that it was always the same way.
12. I thought what a pretty girl she was *herself*.
13. His friendship with Michael, begun in hospital, had languished and renewed *itself* suddenly.
14. You said so *yourself*. (Terry McMillan)
15. He lived a life strange even to *himself*. (John Galsworthy)
16. The building *itself* was a one-story stucco structure, painted a plain sand color, bristling with assorted antennae. (S. Grafton)
17. Edgar Linton, as multitudes have been before and will after him, was infatuated; and believed *himself* the happiest man alive on the day he led her to Gimmerton chapel, three years subsequent to his father's death. (E. Bronte)
18. He has so wanted to have a son *himself*. (John Galsworthy)
19. I love him better than *myself*, Ellen. (E. Bronte)
20. Take *yourself* and your dusters off; when company are in the house, servants don't commence scouring and cleaning in the room, where they are! (E. Bronte)

➤ Some verbs are rarely or never used with a reflexive pronoun in English, but often are in other languages. These include: ***complain, concentrate, get up/hot/tired, lie down, meet, relax, remember, feel, sit down, hurry, wake up:***

- She ***concentrated*** hard on getting the job finished. (*not* she concentrated herself....)
- I ***don't feel*** very well today. (*not* I don't feel myself very well today)
  - With some verbs reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize particularly that the subject is doing the action. They include: ***shave, dress, undress, wash, acclimatize, adapt, behave, hide, move.*** Compare:
- ***She*** quickly ***dressed*** and went down for breakfast. (rather than ... dressed herself....)
- He's recovering well from the accident and ***he*** is now able to dress ***himself***.
- The magazine teaches parents how ***to behave*** towards children. (*not* ... behave themselves)

- Did the children *behave themselves* while we were out? (= behave well)
  - The phrase *(all) by yourself/himself* is used to emphasize ‘without any help’ or ‘completely alone’:
- We’ve decided to go on holiday *(all) by ourselves* next year.
  - After a preposition of place or position we use a personal pronoun, not a reflexive pronoun:
- **She** put her bag *next to her*; **Jim** had the money *with him*.
  - After prepositions closely linked to their verbs we use a reflexive pronoun when the subject and object refer to the same thing:
- **He** came out of the interview looking *pleased with himself*. (*not ... pleased with him.*)
  - Other verb + prepositions like this include: *be shamed of, believe in, care about, do with, hear about, look after, look at, take care of etc.*
  - After *as (for), like, but (for), except (for)* either the personal pronoun or the reflexive pronoun is used to refer to the subject:
- Howard made sure that everyone *except him/ himself* had a drink, as he was driving.

**Exercise 6. Add an appropriate reflexive pronoun to each sentence to add emphasis. If it is not possible to put a reflexive pronoun, write X.**

1. All you have to do is hide ..... behind the door and shout ‘Surprise!’ when she walks in.
2. They’re always complaining ..... about my cooking.
3. George’s mother didn’t want him to take the job on the oil rig. In fact, George didn’t feel very happy about it .....
4. There’s no need for you to come, I can carry the shopping .....
5. Young people ..... need to get more involved in politics.
6. I don’t have any trouble getting to sleep, but I always wake ..... up very early.
7. That’s a beautiful sweater, Susan, did you knit it .....
8. For an explanation we need to look back to the beginning of the Universe .....
9. I find that I get ..... tired very easily these days.
10. You and Bridget ought to relax ..... more – you’re working too hard.
11. Amy was only three when she started to wash and dress .....
12. I haven’t tried it ....., but I’m told that karate is very good exercise.

13. Nobody but I even did him the kindness to call him a dirty boy, and bid him wash ....., once a week; and children of his age seldom have a natural pleasure in soap and water. (E. Bronte)
14. A woman had come out in a cream-coloured parasol. Irene .....! (John Galsworthy)
15. My host ..... escorted me to the door. (E. Bronte)
16. Tossing about, she increased her feverish bewilderment to madness, and tore the pillow with her teeth; then raising ..... up all burning, desired that I would open the window. (E. Bronte)
17. ‘She does not know what she says. Will you ruin her, because she has not wit to help .....?’ (E. Bronte)
18. I returned to her apartment, extinguished my candle, and seated ..... in the window. (E. Bronte)
19. ‘There’s nobody here!’ I insisted. ‘It was ....., Mrs. Linton: you knew it a while since.’ (E. Bronte)
20. He had never quite forgiven Emily for having been as much taken in by Montague Dartie as he ..... had been. (John Galsworthy)
21. ‘This is what I call an I-know-that-you-know-that-I-know situation, so behave ..... and you’ll get this envelope back plus the other fifty thousand pounds when we reach Kilalla.’ (Jack Higgins)
22. I thought the Government supported GM food. Didn’t the PM say that .....

***Exercise 7. Correct these sentences if necessary.***

1. I had a swim, quickly dried me, and put on my clothes.
2. Now that he was famous, he heard a lot about himself on TV and radio.
3. Why don't you bring the children with you?
4. You ought to be ashamed of you.
5. They pulled the sledge behind themselves through the snow.
6. She put out her hand and introduced herself as Antonia Darwin.
7. ‘Have you ever been to California?’ ‘No... oh, yes, once,’ he corrected him.
8. I could feel the ground start to move under me.
9. They applied them to the task with tremendous enthusiasm.
10. It was another rainy Sunday afternoon and we didn’t know what to do with us.
11. She should look after herself better. She’s lost a lot of weight.

12. I am by me. (E. Bronte)
13. He kept his growing sentiment religiously to him. (John Galsworthy)
14. ‘That is quite possible,’ remarked Heathcliff, forcing himself to seem calm: ‘quite possible that your master should have nothing but common humanity and a sense of duty to fall back upon.’ (E. Bronte)
15. It’s nice to have her all to us, isn’t it? (John Galsworthy)
16. I am sure I should be me were I one among the heather on those hills. (E. Bronte)
17. He’ll never let his friends be at ease, and he’ll never be at ease. (E. Bronte)
18. I yielded, in the faint hope that Linton might prove, by his reception of us, how little of the tale was founded on fact. (E. Bronte)
19. He (Soames) had never been a peacock like that fellow Dartie, or fancied him a woman’s man, but he had a certain belief in his own appearance. (John Galsworthy)
20. It was not to amuse that I went: I was often wretched all the time. (E. Bronte)
21. Evan is thinking of bringing some work with himself.
22. Ouch! The radiator is really hot! I’ve burnt me!
23. The paint effect you’ve used on the wall is great! Did you do it by yourself?
24. The girl’s coach rebuked herself for missing some very easy shots.
25. Most people find this style of art depressing. As for myself, I think it’s stimulating!

***Exercise 8. Insert the proper self-pronoun.***

1. I’m ashamed of ..... for all the energy I wasted believing something that wasn’t even true. (Terry McMillan)
2. Today, all I spotted was a family of feral cats sunning ..... on the hillside above the beach. (S. Grafton)
3. Does Lovey stay here by ..... a lot? (Terry McMillan)
4. ‘An unfeeling child,’ I thought to .....; ‘how lightly she dismisses her old playmate’s troubles.’ (E. Bronte)
5. The moon had passed behind the oak tree now, endowing it with uncanny life, so that it seemed watching him – the oak tree his boy had been so fond of climbing, out of which he had once fallen and hurt ....., and hadn’t cried! (John Galsworthy)

6. He saw his feeling as it was, in the nature of an infatuation. Ridiculous, perhaps, but so real that sooner or later it must disclose ..... (John Galsworthy)
7. She looked so piteously at Soames, she checked ..... on the point of speech so often that Aunt Hester excused..... and said she must go and bathe Timothy's eye – he had a sty coming. (John Galsworthy)
8. But the moment he recollected ..... enough to notice me watching, he thundered a command for me to go, and I obeyed. (E. Bronte)
9. I wish I could do something to show her how sorry I am for never allowing ..... to get close to her. (Terry McMillan)
10. He did not omit to avail ..... of the opportunity, cautiously and briefly. (E. Bronte)
11. I suddenly rose and revealed ..... (E. Bronte)
12. Linton will conjecture how it is, and trouble ..... no further about you. (E. Bronte)
13. I found ..... loitering in the vicinity of her desk, hoping I'd be nearby if he should happen to call in. (S. Grafton)
14. Catherine amused ..... with dancing to and fro before the door, while I tried all the large keys in succession. I had applied the last, and found that none would do. (E. Bronte)
15. 'No,' said Soames suddenly, 'I prefer that you should keep the watch going discreetly in Paris, and not concern ..... with this end.' (John Galsworthy)
16. 'Oh, it will be something worse,' she said. 'And what shall I do when papa and you leave me, and I am by .....?' (E. Bronte)
17. He flung ..... into the nearest seat, and on my approaching hurriedly to ascertain if she had fainted, he gnashed at me and foamed like a mad dog, and gathered her to him with greedy jealousy. (E. Bronte)
18. Her poor little heart reproached ..... for even that passing forgetfulness of its cares. (E. Bronte)
19. 'Stay to rest .....,,' he replied. (E. Bronte)
20. You would imagine I was the devil ....., Miss Linton, to excite such horror. (E. Bronte)

## RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

**RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS** *each other, one another* express mutual actions or relations. *Each other* usually refers to two subjects, *one another* to more than two, though in informal English the two forms are used interchangeably. *Each other* is far more common than *one another*, the latter being a little more formal and old-fashioned.

Reciprocal pronouns distinguish the category of case (common, genitive).

- Reciprocal pronouns are used with such verbs as *attract, avoid, complement, embrace, face, fight, help, kiss, marry, meet, repel*.
- With some verbs the preposition 'with' is used before *each other/one another*. Verbs like this include *agree, coincide, collaborate, compete, contrast, co-operate, disagree, joke, mix, quarrel, talk*.

### **Exercise 9. Insert *each other* or *one another*.**

1. The old couple looked at .....
2. They were red in the face and found looking at ..... for a moment.
3. The rest of us looked at ..... in amazement. He looked shrewdly at the three.
4. Joan and Roy spoke to ..... only about the game.
5. For the next three days neither Philip nor they spoke to .....
6. The two boys faced .....
7. The two girls leant towards ..... and spoke in tones audible to no one else.
8. In time, they were joined by others — Olwen Kirby, Lesley Stevens, Jill Bal-lam. Nervously, they grinned at .....
9. The two stood gazing at ..... for a minute in silence.
10. And for a moment they all three stood silently looking at .....
11. For a moment nothing more was said. And then Simmon and Ralph suddenly smiled at .....
12. These three ladies disliked and distrusted .....
13. The twins, still sharing their identical grin, jumped up and run round .....
14. They sat opposite ....., as they had so often sat before.
15. As lads they had an aversion to ....., and Heathcliff would hate just as much to hear him praised: it's human nature. (E. Bronte)



16. 'Catherine and Edgar are as fond of ..... as any two people can be,' cried Isabella, with sudden vivacity. (E. Bronte)
17. They were silent – their faces hid against ....., and washed by ..... tears. At least, I suppose the weeping was on both sides; as it seemed Heathcliff could weep on a great occasion like this. (E. Bronte)
18. 'We bar ....., ' said Jolly shortly. (John Galsworthy)
19. The curtains were not yet drawn, though the lamps outside were lighted, the two cousins sat waiting on ..... . (John Galsworthy)
20. At the far end of the room, four wing chairs faced ..... near the front windows. (S. Grafton)
21. The outdoors, as far as I can see, is made up almost entirely of copulating creatures who eat ..... afterward. (S. Grafton)
22. The two stared at ..... . (John Galsworthy)

***Exercise 10. Complete the sentences with one of these verbs in an appropriate form followed by either each other or with one another.***

<i>avoid</i>	<i>collaborate</i>	<i>compete</i>	<i>face</i>	<i>complement</i>
<i>help</i>	<i>kiss</i>	<i>communicate</i>	<i>look</i>	<i>know</i>

1. Countries ..... to build the tallest building in the world.
2. We had an argument a few days ago and since then we've tried .....
3. I think strawberries and ice cream ..... really well.
4. The companies ..... to produce an electric car. It's good to see them working together at last.
5. The two families .....
6. It was the first time the two players ..... across the chess board.
7. If you've got a computer, too, we should be able ..... by email.
8. The pupils don't work on their own; in fact, they're encouraged .....
9. We ..... and were friends again.
10. The twins ..... glumly.

## RELATIVE, CONJUNCTIVE, INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

**Relative, conjunctive, interrogative pronouns** are lexico-grammatical homonyms, as they coincide in the pronunciation, form, spelling, but different in meaning and syntactic function:

- relative pronouns introduce attributive clauses;
- conjunctive pronouns introduce subject, object, predicative clauses;
- interrogative pronouns introduce questions.

**Exercise 11. Analyze the italicized pronouns and state, whether they are relative, conjunctive or interrogative.**

1. *What* was the matter with the fellow that he looked so happy?
2. Maybe he just forgot *what* it was like to be young.
3. Peter inquired sharply, '*Who* are you?' — 'Do you mean *who* or *what*?'
4. With a jerk the mechanism took hold and the elevator started down. '*Which* elevator is this?' — 'Number four.'
5. He shifted to the side window *which* overlooked the stableyard, and whistled down to the dog Balthasar, *who* lay for ever under the clock tower.
6. *Who* was there he could go to? (John Galsworthy)
7. He knew *what* was happening, of course.
8. 'Allen, *whose* apartment is this?' she said quietly. 'Mine, if I want it.' — 'But *who* does it belong to now?'
9. Meantime, our young companion, *who* sat too removed from us to hear *what* was said, began to evince symptoms of uneasiness, probably repenting that he had denied himself the treat of Catherine's society for fear of a little fatigue. (E. Bronte)
10. He got up from the window-seat and roamed in the big grey ghostly room, *whose* walls were hung with silvered canvas.
11. *What* passed at their meeting was not recorded in detail.
12. 'Isn't she Miss?' said Gavin to his sister, with a gesture towards Faith. 'Yes, that is *what* you would call me,' said the latter.
13. '*Who* can it be?' I thought. (E. Bronte)
14. He was very unorthodox, *which* frightened them.
15. *What* he saw seemed to satisfy him.
16. The first thing she asked him was *what* he thought of Avic Crichton.
17. He looked very well-bred, *which* indeed he was, and he had exquisite manners.

18. I often think of those people *who* used to cross our threshold and accept our hospitality.
19. It was too late to attempt an escape, *which* she would gladly have done had it been practicable. (E. Bronte)
20. The candles were still burning in the dining-room and the first thing he saw when he entered was *what* remained of the supper they had eaten, the two plates, the two cups and the frying-pan in *which* Mary had cooked eggs and bacon.

***Exercise 12. Analyze the usage of that. State, whether it is a subordinating conjunction, or a relative/ conjunctive/ demonstrative pronoun.***

1. He was the architect of this very house *that* we live in now.
2. All *that* was left, was to compose the letter.
3. I thought it was in Los Angeles *that* I had some sort of breakthrough. (Robert B. Parker)
4. When supper was over, Jane and a small brother were sent down to a brook *that* ran at the bottom of the meadow to fetch a pail of water for washing up.
5. You look wonderful! Try to keep *that* girlish form!
6. The servants couldn't bear his tyrannical and evil conduct long: Joseph and I were the only two *that* would stay. (E. Bronte)
7. Everything *that* you just said is true. (Terry McMillan)
8. And then one day he saw *that* which moved him to uneasy wrath – two riders, in a glade of the park close to the Ham Gate, of whom she on the left hand was most assuredly Holly on the silver roan, and he on the right hand as assuredly that 'squirt' Val Dartie. (John Galsworthy)
9. Still, it would look well with the Court; and he would see *that* Dreamer brought it out. (John Galsworthy)
10. But they are judgments that have to be made; either he did it, or he didn't, and there's enough *that's* bothersome about the hypothesis *that* he did, to make me at least consider *that* he didn't. (Robert B. Parker)
11. There was in fact nothing in the house *that* suggested a life lived with exhilaration. (Robert B. Parker)
12. 'I believe *that* you need to resolve your relationship with Richie.'  
 'Might *that* not be a relationship rooted in love?'  
 'It might,' Julie said. 'But the fact *that* you can't be with him or without him suggests *that* there's some pathology involved.' (Robert B. Parker)

13. She refused; and I unwillingly donned a cloak, and took my umbrella to accompany her on a stroll to the bottom of the park: a formal walk *which* she generally affected if low-spirited – and *that* she invariably was when Mr Edgar had been worse than ordinary. (E. Bronte)
14. What the hell is this, a warning *that* you're not going to try? (Robert B. Parker)
15. *That* evening he'd take her for a walk and they'd play ball and she'd sleep in bed with him in the room *that* looked out over the harbor, and filled with light when the sun came up. (Robert B. Parker)
16. You recall *that* I love Rosie. (Robert B. Parker)
17. And you don't trust me to make *that* decision? (Robert B. Parker)
18. Does it annoy you *that* I ask? (Robert B. Parker)
19. I knew it was not kindness *that* prompted the offer.
  - **WHO** is used to refer to animate objects, people; sometimes it is used to refer to animals, particularly domestic pets;
  - **WHOM** is used in the object position, after prepositions; it is formal and rarely used in conversation;
  - **WHICH/ WHAT** are used to refer to inanimate objects, animals, ideas;
  - **WHICH** is used:
    - to refer to the whole situation talked about in the sentence outside the relative clause, in this case the relative clause is always marked off by commas: The book won't be published until next year, **which** is disappointing. Here **which** refers to the fact that 'the book won't be published until next year';
    - when there is a limited choice: 'My shoulder hurts,' I said. '**Which** shoulder?' I touched my left shoulder.
      - **THAT** is used in the following cases:
        - to introduce attributive relative restrictive clauses when the meaning of the antecedent of the attributive clause is concrete;
        - when the antecedent is modified by an adjective in the superlative degree: She is one of *the kindest* people (**that**) I know;
        - to introduce attributive clauses after the pronouns **something, anything, everything, nothing, all, little, much, none**: Is there *anything* (**that**) I can do to help?

**Exercise 13. Fill in conjunctive, relative, interrogative pronouns.**

- a)
  1. He changed the subject to the only one ..... could bring the majority of them together.
  2. It was Martin ..... was freer, not Irene.

3. .... am I speaking to, please?
4. I don't care ..... he says to me, I know I'm a real artist.
5. Everything ..... had gone before, was like nothing.
6. .... side of the bed do you like, Mum?
7. They reached the street in ..... she lived.
8. There was a suspicion of truth in ..... she said, and it made Philip angry enough to answer ..... first came into his head.
9. She bade him a casual good-night, ..... made him think he had been dreaming.
10. The little ..... Martin said had not been friendly.
11. He asked Mrs Otter whether she knew ..... had become of her.
12. He was late, ..... made her angry.
13. Good evening, Mrs Kennedy. And ..... of you ladies is Mrs Wilkes?
14. Clutton put his hands over his eyes so that he might concentrate his mind on ..... he wanted to say.
15. The last thing ..... any of us wants is breakfast.
16. .... was he like?
17. Please make up your mind, therefore, whether you want me to decorate for you, or to retire, ..... on the whole I should prefer to do.
18. And he began considering ..... of those windows could be hers under the green sunblinds.
19. He pulled the handkerchief off his face, got up from the sofa on ..... he was lying, and went into the dining-room.
20. .... troubled him most was the uselessness of Fanny's effort.
21. Mr Wells told me – and I quote his own words – that it was one of the sweetest, kindest things ..... was ever done for him.
22. .... do you think I want tea for?

b)

1. 'It is impossible for you to be my friend and his at the same time; and I absolutely require to know ..... you choose.' (E. Bronte)
2. I end up sounding like a whiner, ..... is not what I intend. (S. Grafton)
3. The delirium was not fixed, however; having weaned her eyes from contemplating the outer darkness, by degrees she centered her attention on him, and discovered ..... it was ..... held her. (E. Bronte)

4. He was the only thing there ..... seemed decent; and I thought he never looked better. (E. Bronte)
5. 'There's a letter for you, Mrs Linton,' I said, gently inserting it in one hand ..... rested on her knee. (E. Bronte)
6. I suppose you know ..... the lady you've been watching really is? (John Galsworthy)
7. There was nothing ..... I could see. (Robert B. Parker)
8. Tell her ..... Heathcliff is: an unreclaimed creature, without refinement, without cultivation: an arid wilderness of furze and whinstone. (E. Bronte)
9. 'Get up! You could be free instantly. That is the most diabolical deed ..... ever you did.' (E. Bronte)
10. My master, perceiving that she would not take his word for her uncle-in-law's evil disposition, gave a hasty sketch of his conduct to Isabella and the manner in ..... Wuthering Heights became his property. (E. Bronte)
11. Thank Heaven she had not that maddening British conscientiousness ..... refused happiness for the sake of refusing. (John Galsworthy)
12. They could not propose anything in daylight ..... did not meet with the one response: 'Sorry; I've got to see a fellow...' (John Galsworthy)
13. Soames gave him the sideway look ..... had reduced many to silence in its time. (John Galsworthy)
14. Witnesses to his father's departure and continued absence followed – one of their own maids even, ..... struck Val as particularly beastly. (John Galsworthy)
15. And he, ..... had not much gift of insight, had suddenly a gleam of vision. (John Galsworthy)
16. You are one of those things ..... are ever found when least wanted, and when you are wanted never! (E. Bronte)
17. He wants to go home with everybody ..... comes over there. (Terry McMillan)
18. 'Impossible. He has an uncanny flair for anything ..... is worrying.' (John Galsworthy)
19. Trouble creates a vacuum into ..... the rest of us get sucked. (S. Grafton)
20. Isn't it pleasant to know that ..... you do you can none of you be destitute? (John Galsworthy)

- If the relative pronoun functions as *a subject* in the attributive relative restrictive clause it introduces *it can not be omitted*;
- If the relative pronoun functions as *an object* in the attributive relative restrictive clause it introduces *it can be omitted*.
- If the relative pronoun introduces an attributive relative non-restrictive clause, it can not be omitted.

***Exercise 14. Omit the relative pronouns where possible.***

1. He returned to his desk and dialled a number which he knew by heart.
2. I wrote other novels, which were published, and I write plays.
3. His eyes, which were hot and inquisitive, looked from Martin to me.
4. In the dark and the cold of the morning they drove out the country road through the mist that hung heavy over the flat.
5. He was the architect of this very house that we live in now.
6. The telephone, which was on a side table beside Guy's chair, mercifully rang out.
7. Rarely, a plane leaf floated down, in an autumnal air that was at the same time exhilarating and sad.
8. All that I could then do was sit back and wait.
9. He lost himself in a maze of thoughts that were rendered vague by his lack of words to express them.
10. He offered a cigarette, which the pilot refused.
11. It was the first time that I had heard John talk about Jack.
12. She came into a room in which a child was sleeping and drew the curtains.
13. Now his wife sat with her head forward on her hands that rested on the table.
14. Often they discussed things about which he knew nothing.
15. That's the man who I met at Allison's party.

***Exercise 15. Translate the following sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of relative, conjunctive, interrogative pronouns.***

1. Все, что он сказал, правда.
2. Нет ничего такого, чего бы эта женщина не знала.
3. Мы хотим знать все, что произошло с вами, пока нас не было.
4. Новости, которые вы мне сообщили, очень интересные.
5. Человек, который только что звонил, оставил сообщение.

6. Я верю всему, что он говорит.
7. Открой другой ящик, тот, что налево.
8. Он – один из самых интересных людей, которых я когда-либо встречал.
9. Она разрешила взять любую книгу, которая мне понравится.
10. Я помню все, что вы мне сказали.
11. Человек, который так тебе не нравится, мой муж.
12. Вот книга, о которой ты спрашивала.
13. Я захвачу все, что нам может понадобиться.
14. Это книга, которую никто не хочет читать.
15. Она была в том же платье, в котором я видела ее на свадьбе ее сестры.
16. В нем было что-то, что заставляло его верить.
17. Он говорил о людях и местах, которые он посетил.
18. Но он ошибается, именно он не прав в этой ситуации.
19. Мне кажется, это единственный способ помочь ему.
20. Он приехал на неделю раньше, что казалось невероятным.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

### EVERY/EACH

**EACH (OF)** and **EVERY** are used with singular countable nouns to mean all things or people in a group of two or more (**each (of)**) or three or more (**every**):

- The programme is on **every** (*or each*) weekday morning at 10.00.
- **Each** (*or every*) ticket costs £35.

We use *a singular verb* after **each (of)** and **every**:

- Following the flood, **every** building in the area *needs* major repair work.  
However, when **each** follows the noun or pronoun it refers to, the noun and verb are *plural*:
- **Every** student *is* tested twice a year. They *are* **each** given a hundred questions to do.

**NOTE** **They**, **their** and **them** are used to refer back to phrases such as ‘each soldier’, ‘every candidate’ etc. which do not indicate a specific gender (male or female). Compare:

- **Each woman** complained that **she** (*or they*) had been unfairly treated.
- **Every candidate** said that **they** thought the interview was too long.



Often **EVERY** and **EACH (OF)** are used with little difference in meaning. However, **EVERY** is used:

- with **almost, nearly, virtually, just about, practically** etc. that emphasise we are talking about a group as a whole:
- *Almost every* visitor stopped and stared;
  - if we are talking about a large group with an indefinite number of things or people in it:
- Before I met Daniel, I thought *every small child* liked sweets! (*rather than ...each...*);
- **Every new car** now has to be fitted with seat belts. (*rather than ...each...*);
  - after **a possessive**:
- I listened to **his every word**;
  - with a plural noun when **every** is followed by *a number*:
- I go to the dentist **every six months**. (*rather than ...each six months.*);
  - in phrases referring to regular or repeated events such as **every other (kilometre), every single (day), every so often, every few (months), every now and again** (= occasionally):
  - with abstract uncountable nouns such as **chance, confidence, hope, reason, right** and **sympathy** to show a positive attitude to what we are saying. Here every means ‘complete’ or ‘total’:
- She has **every chance** of success in her application for the job.  
**EACH** is used:
  - if we are thinking about the separate individuals in the group.  
Compare:
- We greeted **each** guest as they entered. (Emphasises that we greeted them individually)
- We greeted **every** guest as they entered. (Means something like ‘all the guests’).
  - when we are talking about both people or things in a pair:
- I only had two suitcases, but **each** (one) weighed over 20 kilos;
  - **with of + noun**:
- **Each of them** took far longer than expected;
- **Each of the walkers** was well over sixty;
  - on its own:
- There were six people in the group, and **each** was determined to win the race (*or each one/ each one of them*)
  - after nouns and pronouns for emphasis:
- John and Angela **each** had their own supply of biscuits.
- They **each** took a map with them.

When we use **all** (with plural or uncountable nouns) or **every** (with singular countable nouns) to talk about things or people in a group they have a similar meaning:

- Have you eaten **all** the apples? = He ate **every** apple in the house.

However, when we use **all** or **every** to talk about time, their meaning is usually different:

- John stayed **all** weekend. (= the whole of the weekend)
- John stayed **every** weekend when he was at university. (= without exception)

***Exercise 16. Complete these sentences with every or each, whichever is correct or more likely. If you can use either every or each, write them both.***

1. I try to visit my relatives in Spain ..... other year.
2. .... day we went to work by bicycle.
3. There were tears streaming down ..... side of her face.
4. Don has to go overseas on business ..... six weeks or so.
5. In a football match, ..... team has eleven players.
6. This year I have visited virtually ..... European country.
7. From next year, ..... baby in the country will be vaccinated against measles.
8. The aeroplanes were taking off ..... few minutes.
9. I have..... confidence in his ability to do the job well.
10. She pronounced .....name slowly and carefully as I wrote them down.
11. Rain is likely to reach ..... part of the country by morning.
12. I visited him in hospital nearly ..... day.
13. We have.....reason to believe that the operation has been a success.
14. When he took his gloves off, I noticed that .....one had his name written inside.
15. He and ..... member of his family owned it wholly, sanely, secretly, without any more interference from the public than had been necessitated by their births, their marriages, their deaths. (John Galsworthy)
16. There were ten color photographs, ..... with a nightmarish quality of violated flesh. (S. Grafton)
17. Seven days glided away, ..... one marking its course by the henceforth rapid alteration of Edgar Linton's state. (E. Bronte)

18. Nobody, of course, dared speak of it before him, but ..... of the four other Forsytes present held their breath, aware that nothing could prevent Aunt Juley from making them all uncomfortable. (John Galsworthy)
19. ‘And I suppose ..... time you see her you put your opinions into her mind.’ (John Galsworthy)
20. The stained glass windows were not elaborate. .... was divided into six simple panels of pale gold with a scripture written across the bottom. (S. Grafton)
21. I have ..... faith in you. (Jack Higgins)

***Exercise 17. Find the mistakes in the following extracts and correct them.***

1. Each member of the team have to undergo a fitness test before almost each match.
2. Every evidence seems to suggest that he is innocent, and he has all chance of being released soon.
3. Each soldier were praised for his bravery, and was each given a medal.
4. The regulations say that students must pass every one of his exams to gain a qualification.
5. Nowadays we seem to have water shortages virtually each year. The one this year was very bad and lasted every summer.
6. I hope all will be comfortable here. We try to make each guest feel at home.
7. Anyone calls her Maggie, but her real name’s Margaret.
8. Has everyone seen Lucy recently? I haven’t seen her every day.
9. They every promise to adhere to my wishes and Spencer tells me he and Brianna will see us late Thursday afternoon. (Terry McMillan)
10. ... in wet weather he took to smoking with Joseph, and they sat like automatons, one on every side of the fire. (E. Bronte)
11. All that he needed was there, and all was where it should be. (Robert B. Parker)
12. It was Winifred who went up to him, and, laying one hand on every of his swathed, helpless arms, said. (John Galsworthy)
13. His passion was getting into trouble, making life miserable for every else. (S. Grafton)
14. The nearer I got to the house the more agitated I grew; and on catching sight of it I trembled each limb. (E. Bronte)

15. I've read just about all I could find about Alzheimer's on the Internet.  
(Terry McMillan)
16. Every person I asked says that he is going to enjoy the walk.
17. Every of them gave his opinion in turn.
18. If you don't listen carefully to his each word, he'll twist you around his little finger.
19. He had no intention of going to the party but in the end just fell asleep.
20. You will all receive a name badge on arrival.

***Exercise 18. In these sentences there are some idiomatic expressions using each and every. Do you know what they mean? If not, check in a dictionary or in the key.***

1. I see John *every now and again*.
2. It's a pity you don't like my cooking. But *each to their own*, I suppose.
3. Why don't we have yoghurt? It's *every bit as* good as cream.
4. What do you think of these fish? I caught *each and every one* of them myself.
5. The baby monkeys ran *every which way*.
6. *Every once in a while* she got up and walked around, and then went back to her book.
7. It rains *every single* time I go to France.
8. Luckily, I only go there *every now and then/ every once in a while*.
9. On the other hand, I go to Belgium practically *every other* week.

***Think of other contexts in which you could use them. Try to use them in your own speech.***

***Exercise 19. Insert each, every and their compounds.***

1. He had been sitting out there, looking suddenly quite horrible with a hand on ..... knee.
2. She and Ethel exchanged voluminous letters. Ethel described ..... detail of ..... current affair.
3. The bedrooms were all the same, ..... with a window and a door giving onto the courtyard.
4. He was a kind host, however, for though he circulated freely throughout the room talking to his guests, .....few minutes he would appear at his wife's side to see that she was happy and comfortable.

5. During the next week, Tom did four more drafts of the speech, .....of which Hopkins praised highly before asking for a rewrite.
6. He didn't answer. He had no doubt that she meant ..... word she said.
7. There was ..... kind of news in the paper: accidents, shipwrecks, sports, and politics.
8. He cleared his throat three times to speak and failed ..... time.
9. We sat around silently for a moment, ..... trying to think of some possibility that we had overlooked.
10. .... few hours a fishing village came into sight.
11. The two little girls held his hands, one on ..... side.
12. .... pillar had its shadow and ..... shadow its crouching patient.
13. Mr Green took upon himself to order ..... and ..... about the place. (E. Bronte)
14. Mrs Linton's glance followed him suspiciously: ..... movement woke a new sentiment in her. (E. Bronte)
15. It would have mostly suites, and ..... suite would have a living room and a library with a fireplace in ..... room, and be furnished with comfortable couches, easy chairs and a grand piano. (S. Sheldon)
16. Place was destroyed by fire about ten years back. Congregation rebuilt ..... from the ground right on up. (S. Grafton)
17. I gave Michael books and pictures to prepare Minny ..... evening, and to put her back in the stable: you mustn't scold him either, mind. (E. Bronte)
18. In the lot were several small frame shacks, probably one room apiece, with low board porches across the front. To ..... had been attached a lean-to which probably was a bathroom. (R.B. Parker)
19. Then she began to bother me, and I said I'd had enough plague with the tiresome thing; we ..... had our tasks, and hers was to wait on Linton. (E. Bronte)
20. You have ..... right to be dissatisfied with ..... member of your team.

***Exercise 20. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of the pronouns each and every.***

1. Каждый школьник знает правила дорожного движения.
2. Это была большая комната с крашеным потолком и гобеленом на каждой стене.

3. Она встречала его на катке каждую субботу.
4. Известно, что почти каждый ребенок любит яблоки. Мы дали каждой девочке и каждому мальчику по яблоку.
5. Каждую неделю я проводил несколько дней в деревне.
6. Он продолжал смотреть на часы каждые пять минут.
7. Каждый студент должен знать свои обязанности.
8. Хотя в комнате никто не жил, тетя Керри убирала ее каждый день.
9. Каждый из нас должен был выполнить свою работу вовремя.
10. Когда он был студентом, он каждый год ездил на Урал.
11. У каждого близнеца был мяч.
12. Он пожал руку каждому гостю.
13. Он навещает нас каждое воскресенье.
14. Преподаватель сказал, что каждый из нас должен внимательно прочитать эту статью.
15. На конференции каждому дали блокнот и ручку.
16. Брюссель так же красив и романтичен, как Париж.
17. Он купил подарок каждому ребенку.
18. Иногда моя подруга звонит из Германии.
19. Почти всякий раз, как я вижу ее, на ней то же самое платье.
20. Каждый заверил, что он доберется до пляжа первым.

### ALL (OF)/ THE WHOLE (OF)/ BOTH (OF)

**ALL** and **ALL OF** are used when talking about the total number of things or people in a group or the total amount of something:

- **All** (of) my brothers and sisters were at the airport to see me off.
- The baby seems to cry **all** (of) the time.
  - To make negative sentences with **all** we normally use **not all**, particularly in a formal style.
- **Not all** the seats were taken. (*rather than* All the seats were not taken.)
  - However, in spoken English we sometimes use **all...not**. We can also use **none (of)**. But **not all** and **none (of)** have a different meaning. Compare:
- **Not all** my cousins were at the wedding. (= some of them were there)
- **None** of my cousins were at the wedding. (= not one of them was there)
  - Notice where we put **all** in the following sentences:

- We are **all** going to Athens during the vacation. (*rather than* We all are going...)
- They have **all** heard the news already. (*rather than* They all have heard...)
- **All** (of) their hard work had been of no use. (*not* Their all hard work...)
- These are **all** confidential files. (*not* These all are... - except in informal spoken English)
- I planted **all** four (of the) trees when I moved into the house.
  - In modern English **all** is not used without a noun to mean ‘everyone’ or ‘everything’:
- Everyone was waiting to hear the results. (*not* All were waiting...)
  - **All** can mean ‘everything’ when it is followed by a *relative clause*:
- I don’t agree with **all** *that he said*. (= everything that he said)
  - We can also use **all** without a noun to mean ‘the only thing’:
- **All** she wants to do is help.

### **ALL (OF) THE and THE WHOLE (OF)**

- Before singular countable nouns we usually use **the whole (of)** rather than **all (of) the**:
  - They weren’t able to stay for **the whole** concert. (*rather than* ....all (of) the concert.)
  - **The whole of** the field was flooded. (*rather than* All (of) the field was flooded.)
- However, in informal speech **all (of) the** is sometimes used in this way.
- Before plural nouns we can use **all (of)** or **whole**, but they have different meanings. Compare:
  - **All (of the) towns** had their electricity cut off. (= every town in an area)
  - After the storm, **whole towns** were left without electricity. (= some towns were completely affected)

### **BOTH (OF) and ALL (OF)**

- when we want to talk about two things together we use **both (of)**. **Both (of)** and **all (of)** are used in the same places in sentences.
- **Both (of)** the houses have now been sold.
- Are **both of** you (*or* Are you **both**) going to the conference?
- I went on holiday with **both of** them (*or* ...with them **both...**) last year.
- They have **both** finished their dinner. (*rather than* They both have finished...)
- We don’t usually make negative sentences with **both (of)**. Instead we use **neither (of)**. However, in informal speech **both (of)** is sometimes used in this way.
- **Neither of** them knew the answer. (*rather than* Both of them didn’t know the answer)

**Exercise 21. Put all in the correct or most appropriate space in each sentence.**

1. I'm pleased to say that you ..... have ..... passed the maths exam.
2. ....his.....papers had blown onto the floor.
3. I've known her.....my.....life.
4. We.....are.....going to have to work harder to get the job done.
5. When I opened the box of eggs, I found that they.....were.....broken.
6. She had to look after.....three of her brother's.....children.
7. This is the moment we.....have.....been waiting for.
8. The jars.....were.....labelled 'Home-made Jam'.
9. ....they.....seemed clever.
10. They.....were ..... very happy.
11. 'Were .....they .....together?' said Eleanor.
12. The meetings.....have ..... been in public places, without concealment.
13. I don't care what ..... people ..... say, they.....can't.....be bad.
14. ....it's .....very boring.
15. They..... would .....be .....so happy there.

**Exercise 22. Underline the correct or more likely alternative.**

1. *All the course* / *The whole course* only lasts for six months.
2. In the 1950s, *all of the families* / *whole families*, from grandparents to children, used to go to football matches on Saturday.
3. Because of the bad weather *all of the schools* / *whole schools* in the city were forced to close.
4. *All the plan* / *The whole plan* is ridiculous. It will never succeed.
5. She must be exhausted. She was on stage *all the performance* / *the whole performance*.
6. *All of the countries* / *Whole countries* in Africa have criticized the United Nations' decision.
7. She never had power to conceal her passion, it always set *her whole* / *all her complexion* in a blaze. (E. Bronte)
8. And that was *all* / *everything* he said on the subject: he did not make a single inquiry further, nor mention her in any way, except directing me to



send what property she had in the house to her fresh home, wherever it was, when I knew it. (E. Bronte)

9. My wife reads *all/ every* your books. (Robert B. Parker)
10. Bring *all/ every* of your friends.
11. I just want to get my bonus, that's *all/ everything*.
12. *All the town/ the whole town* was shocked by her death.
13. I was off sick for *whole weeks/ the whole of the week*.
14. Give me *all/ everything*.
15. Give me *all/ everything* you've got.
16. *All/ everything* I've ever known was the troubles.
17. *All/ everything* is in order. (Jack Higgins)

**Exercise 23. Put both in the correct or most appropriate space in each sentence.**

1. We are wounded a little.
2. We can't stay here together.
3. 'Will you be silent?' said Eleanor.
4. They are in their last year at Cambridge.
5. They remained there laughing and talking until two-thirty.
6. You see, they're old.
7. They paused.
8. They have been waiting for an hour.
9. We were determined to play tennis.
10. They want you to come there presently and stay.
11. They passed him through the curtain opening.
12. We reached home before our dinner-time. (E. Bronte)
13. You and I are agreed on that.
14. Have you eaten those apples?
15. They look a bit strange.

### **BOTH (OF)/ EITHER/ NEITHER**

**BOTH** is used in affirmative sentences, to emphasize two objects or individuals as a whole unit. **BOTH** is used with a plural verb.

**EITHER** is used in affirmative sentences, to emphasize any of two persons or things; it may also mean 'each of two.'

**NEITHER** is used to express negation, in the meaning 'оба нет.' **NEITHER** is used with a singular verb.

**Exercise 24. Translate the following sentences into English, paying attention to the use of both and neither and the verb forms.**

1. Их обоих приняли в университет.
2. Они оба окончили университет с отличием.
3. Они оба не согласны с вами.
4. Они оба больше не живут по этому адресу.
5. Они оба не любят современную музыку.
6. Мы оба не одобряем ваш стиль жизни.
7. Они оба сомневаются в этом.
8. Они оба отказались от премии.
9. Их обоих не исключили из университета.
10. Вы оба не знаете это правило.
11. Они оба пришли вовремя.
12. Мы оба не знали, что делать.
13. Мы оба растерялись.
14. Вы оба не видели этот фильм?
15. Они оба не могли понять ни слова.

**Exercise 25. Fill in either or neither.**

1. Rina was sleeping soundly, her dolls, Susie and Mary, on .....side of her.
2. At the front there were four windows, two on .....side of the door.
3. The sound they heard then made both of them start slightly, though ..... observed it in the other.
4. They each had a large cup of something called coffee, which looked like tea and didn't taste particularly like ..... .
5. He wanted to read something and told her to stop talking: she did not know whether to obey or to get angry, and was so puzzled that she did ..... .

6. On .....side of the stage the candles burned steadily in gently ascending lines.
7. Tom and Nick both shuddered at the thought of meeting a wolf in the forest. But ..... said a word.
8. He followed her into the front room, where Helen and Matthew were sitting stiffly on ..... side of the fireplace with its big overmantel mirror.
9. Young Jolyon put his hand on his father's shoulder, and, as ..... spoke, the episode closed.
10. On ..... side of the road were sand dunes that offered to cover. (J.H. Chase)
11. Both the pilots were in. But ..... of them heard the stewardess enter.
12. Then, carrying a valise in ..... hand, he stepped out on to the landing. (John Galsworthy)
13. I stepped into a narrow passage: at ..... end were doors. (J.H. Chase)
14. 'I guess', I said finally, 'that ..... of us quite knows how we want it.' (Robert B. Parker)
15. At eleven, two white men, ..... of them Melvin, both about his age, came out of the house and walked up the street a ways to a black Porsche Boxster parked away from the streetlight. (Robert B. Parker)
16. There were gray stone walls on ..... hand, sheep huddled together in the rain. (Jack Higgins)

***Exercise 26. Insert either, neither or both.***

1. They ..... laughed and Dan looked down at his desk.
2. We were ..... in the room, but ..... of us spoke for some time.
3. Hatton entered the room, and he looked at her and hesitated, and then took the open book in ..... his hands and came to her side.
4. On ..... side the fields were beneficently tranquil. (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
5. 'Have you been listening at the door, Edgar?' asked the mistress, in a tone particularly calculated to provoke her husband, implying ..... carelessness and contempt of his irritation. (E. Bronte)
6. I guess we're ..... a little bit overtired.
7. The poured concrete urns on ..... side of the front door were planted with perennials that had died back to sticks. (S. Grafton)
8. He looked from Singer to Philip, but ..... answered.
9. They are ..... in custody. (Terry McMillan)

10. Hatton took ..... the plates in one hand, and Nevill's hand in the other, and led the way from the room.
11. She expected men to talk about football and racing, and Philip knew nothing of .....
12. They were ..... running hard, but someone was ahead of them.
13. He spent a restless and unsettled vacation, quite out of touch with ..... of his two sisters.
14. .... of the two women, perhaps, could have said why they were stopped in mid-argument.
15. I used to draw a comparison between him and Hindley Earnshaw, and perplex myself to explain satisfactorily why their conduct was so opposite in similar circumstances. They had ..... been fond husbands, and were ..... attached to their children and I could not see how they shouldn't both have taken the same road, for good or evil. (E. Bronte)
16. Soames added: Well, I hope you'll ..... enjoy yourselves.
17. Two matching sofas were arranged on ..... side of the marble fireplace. (S. Grafton)
18. Papa says you are a wicked man, and you hate ..... him and me; and Ellen says the same. (E. Bronte)
19. There isn't any beginning, at least there isn't any insanity in the family that I know of, at least on ..... side. (F. Scott Fitzgerald)
20. She said he had only been twice, on horseback, accompanying his father; and ..... times he pretended to be quite knocked up for three or four days afterwards. (E. Bronte)

***Exercise 27. If necessary, correct these sentences. Pay attention to the use of pronouns all (of), the whole (of), both (of), either, neither.***

1. All the children didn't come.
2. Many, if none of the students, could speak English fluently.
3. Almost all his spare time is spent working in the garden.
4. Both of us didn't speak again until we had reached home.
5. Everything depends on the last match of the football season.
6. Mrs. Lee and Mr. Pointer, them both teachers, are standing as candidates in the next election.
7. Many people suffer side-effects from taking the drug. However, these not all are bad.

8. I'm afraid neither answer is correct. Try again.
9. All at the meeting voted for Terry.
10. Either the room and its occupants and the scene they gazed on, looked wondrously peaceful. (E. Bronte)
11. Miss Catherine seemed almost over fond of Mr. Linton; and even to his sister, she showed plenty of affection. They were all very attentive to her comfort, certainly. (E. Bronte)
12. He saw I knew naught about it, and he told how a gentleman and lady had stopped to have a horse's shoe fastened at a blacksmith's shop, two miles out of Gimmerton, not very long after midnight. And how the blacksmith's lass had got up to spy who they were: she knew them neither directly. (E. Bronte)
13. The land on neither side of the highway was flat, with white sand creeping up to the edges of the road. (S. Grafton)
14. I observed several splashes of blood about the bark of the tree, and his hand and forehead were both stained. (E. Bronte)
15. I was in my Sonya Burke getup, sitting with both feet on the floor, my knees demurely pressed together. (Robert B. Parker)

***Exercise 28. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the pronouns both, either, neither, all.***

1. Попросите их всех прийти вовремя.
2. Мы с мамой обе остались здесь ждать старшего брата.
3. Оба мальчика были высокие.
4. Она видела, как он выходил из дома с чемоданом в каждой руке.
5. Оба ехали молча или обсуждали такие вещи, которые не интересовали ни того ни другого.
6. Когда она наклонила голову, ее темные волосы упали по обе стороны лица.
7. Они оба стояли неподвижно.
8. Она посмотрела вокруг и увидела, что по обеим сторонам дороги были прекрасные современные высокие дома.
9. Она спросила Джона и Джека, где они так долго были. Ни тот, ни другой ничего не ответили.
10. 'Они все для меня одинаковы', – сказал Филипп.
11. Оба мальчика тяжело дышали.

12. ‘Почему вы все спустились вниз?’ – спросил мой отец.
13. Мы оба засмеялись и расстались друзьями.
14. ‘Бабушка, мы все здесь’, – сказала Люси тихо.
15. ‘Вы боитесь темноты или собаки?’ – ‘Я не боюсь ни того ни другого’.
16. Надеюсь, что мы все будем выполнять свой долг.
17. Он разглядывал меня, а я разглядывала его, и ни тот ни другой ничего не говорили.
18. Мальчики с обеих сторон поддерживали пожилого человека, когда переходили улицу.
19. Вы оба должны приехать к нам и провести у нас вечер.
20. Их обоих просто не узнать – они так изменились.

### OTHER/ANOTHER

***Exercise 29. Insert other or another and the definite article where necessary.***

1. Donald’s wife brought in two big cups, holding one in each hand. One she gave to Daphne and ..... to Donald.
2. Finally Jenny said, ‘Wouldn’t anybody like some more coffee?’ ‘I think my husband could use ..... cup,’ said Naomi.
3. Alec whispered something from ..... side of the table.
4. He spread the magazine flat on the floor, open so that its pages were on one side and its paper on .....
5. There was ..... pause.
6. I cast a quick look back out the window. Three parachutes opened one after ....., in rapid succession.
7. From one piece of news he went to ....., keeping the paper well before his face.
8. He took .....puff on his cigarette.
9. Jimmie was taking a short holiday which he spent in going every night to the theatre in one town after.....
10. He threw his fist on the table and, frowning angrily, protruded one finger after .....
11. I will come in ..... day to hear how they acquit themselves.
12. He entered the room and saw Mike and Jane sitting on the sofa. He looked first at one, then at .....
13. Robinson went out, returning presently for ..... bowl of soup.

14. When it happens, there must be only two persons present beside myself. One is Mark Ruthen. .... is a man whom I expect here only very shortly.
15. Her two sons were playing in the garden. Ann turned her eyes from one to .....
16. Last winter, I did not think, at ..... twelve months' end, I should be amusing a stranger to the family with relating them! (E. Bronte)
17. I confess this blow was greater to me than the shock of Mrs Linton's death: ancient associations lingered round my heart; I sat down in the porch and wept as for a blood relation, desiring Kenneth to get ..... servant to introduce him to the master. (E. Bronte)
18. He was donned in his Sunday garments, with his most sanctimonious and sourest face, and, holding his hat in one hand and his stick in ....., he proceeded to clean his shoes on the mat. (E. Bronte)
19. Wuthering Heights rose above this silvery vapour; but our old house was invisible; it rather dips down on ..... side. (E. Bronte)
20. But Dartie – there wasn't ..... in the directory! (John Galsworthy)

### SOME/ANY

**SOME** and **ANY** are used with plural and uncountable nouns, usually when we are talking about unknown or uncertain amounts or numbers of things.

<b>SOME is used...</b>	<b>ANY is used...</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ in affirmative sentences;</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ in sentences with a negative meaning (including such words as <b>not; barely, hardly, never, rarely, scarcely, seldom; deny, fail, forbid, prohibit; impossible, unlikely</b>);</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ in questions where we expect agreement or the answer 'yes':</li> <li>• Didn't John's parents give him <b>some</b> money? (= I think/expect they did)</li> <li>• Hasn't there been <b>some</b> discussion about the proposal? (= I think/ expect there has)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ in other questions:</li> <li>• Do you have <b>any</b> better ideas?</li> <li>• Has there been <b>any</b> discussion about the proposal yet?</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ when we mean quite a large amount of or large number of something:</li> <li>• The talks went on at <b>some</b> length. (= a long time).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ when we mean 'all (of them), and it is not important which':</li> <li>• <b>Any</b> of the students could have answered the question.</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ when we mean ‘not all’:</li> <li>• <b>Some</b> people don’t like tea.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ when <b>any</b> means ‘if there is/ are any’:</li> <li>• <b>Any</b> questions should be sent to the manager.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ in offers and requests in order to sound positive, expecting the answer ‘Yes’:</li> <li>• Shall I send you <b>some</b> details?</li> <li>• Can you buy <b>some</b> rice in town?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ commonly in ‘if’ clauses:</li> <li>• If you have <b>any</b> problems, let me know. (‘some’ is possible, but is more positive, expecting problems)</li> </ul>

**Some** and **any** can also be used to talk about a particular person or thing without mentioning them specifically:

- There must be **some way** I can contact Jo. (= There must be a way, but I don’t know it.)
- Isn’t there **any book** here that will give me the information I want? (= There must be a book like this, but I can’t find out what/ where it is.)

**Exercise 30. Complete these sentences with some or any.**

1. She’s going on holiday with ..... friends in August.
2. I’m sure he doesn’t have ..... evidence for his accusations.
3. There was never ..... question that she would return home.
4. Wasn’t there ..... problem about your tax last year? I remember you telling me about it.
5. It is reported that there has been ..... improvement in the President’s condition.
6. There is seldom ..... world news in the ‘The Daily Star’.
7. I hope there wasn’t ..... damage to your car.
8. Joan’s mother scarcely ever let her have ..... friends round.
9. ‘I’m going on holiday next week.’ ‘But haven’t you got ..... important work to finish?’
10. There can hardly be .....doubt that he is the best tennis player in the world.
11. ‘You want ..... coffee?’ I asked. ‘I’d love ..... How are you? You look good. I like the haircut.’ (S. Grafton)
12. On the anniversary of her birth we never manifested ..... signs of rejoicing, because it was also the anniversary of my late mistress’s death. (E. Bronte)



13. But you've caught cold: I saw you shivering, and you must have .....  
gruel to drive it out. (E. Bronte)
14. Our hurry prevented ..... comment on the encounter with Heathcliff, as  
we stretched towards home; but I divined instinctively that Catherine's  
heart was clouded now in double darkness. (E. Bronte)
15. 'Are you fit to go? Shall I give you ..... coffee?' (John Galsworthy)

***Exercise 31. If necessary, replace some with any or any with some.***

1. Some bicycles parked in this area will be removed by the police.
2. If you have any old books that you don't want, could you bring them into  
school.
3. The chemicals need to be handled with care as any give off poisonous  
fumes.
4. Any of the money collected will go to helping children with heart disease.
5. She lives some distance away from the nearest town.
6. Any of his paintings, even the smallest, would today sell for thousands of  
pounds.
7. Although he was born in Spain, any of his earlier poems were written in  
French.
8. You'll like this new ice cream. Shall I save any for you?
9. Some large wild animals should be treated with care. They can all hurt  
people if they are frightened.
10. I haven't been here for any years.
11. Can you get some milk when you're out shopping?
12. To get to town you can catch some of the buses that go along New Street. It  
doesn't matter what number it is.
13. Some students who are late will not be allowed to take the exam.
14. 'Have you some money?' – 'Yes.' – 'Loan me any.'
15. Why do you always ask if there's any news?
16. They won't want me to give evidence or something? (John Galsworthy)
17. 'Do you think this is the way you should greet anyone when you walk into  
this house?' (Terry McMillan)
18. Looking at himself in the glass, he said: 'Well, I'm damned if I'm going to  
show something!' and went down. (John Galsworthy)

19. 'If you have got something for Isabella, as no doubt you have, Nelly, give it to her. You needn't make a secret of it: we have no secrets between us.' (E. Bronte)
20. His mother was looking at him; he was suddenly conscious that she had really wanted him there next to her, and that he counted for anything in this business. (John Galsworthy)

***Exercise 32. Complete the sentences with some- or any- + one/ body/ thing/ where. If two answers are possible, give them both.***

21. While you're making dinner, I'll get on with ..... else.
22. He didn't want ..... to do with the arrangements for the party.
23. Diane knew she was ..... in the park, but not exactly where.
24. He thought the bad weather was ..... to do with all the satellites in space.
25. Hardly ..... turned up to the meeting.
26. We don't think there's ..... wrong with her reading ability.
27. I looked all over the house for her, but I couldn't find her .....
28. She was a teacher from ..... near Frankfurt.
29. I couldn't think of ..... else to buy.
30. After the accident Paul didn't go ..... near a horse for two years.
31. I wish there had been ..... there with a camera.
32. Perhaps there's ..... wrong with the car.
33. I've borrowed John's binoculars. If ..... happens to them, he'll be really angry.
34. And call me if you need ..... (Terry McMillan)
35. They weren't going to save ..... life? (Terry McMillan)
36. 'Well, that's all I had to say. .... who comes between man and wife, you know, incurs heavy responsibility.' (John Galsworthy)
37. 'I never stop ..... from doing ....., ' he said. (John Galsworthy)
38. Philip was out of his depth. He became oppressed by the feeling that he was some kind of impostor, a ..... pretending to be a ....., and that he was sure to be found out in no time and sent home in disgrace. (Ken Follett)
39. I also don't recall ever describing ..... that wasn't in concrete terms. (Terry McMillan)

40. 'What's all this?' he said. 'Tell your father! You never tell me .....'  
(John Galsworthy)

### **BODY/ONE**

Compound pronouns with **-BODY** have a generalized meaning; they are *never used with an of-phrase*.

Compound pronouns with **-ONE** have a more definite, concrete meaning; they *may be used with an of-phrase*.

**Exercise 33. Translate the following sentences into English, paying special attention to the compounds with -body and -one**

1. Кто-нибудь из вас видел этот фильм?
2. Никто из нас не знает этого человека.
3. Кто-то из них узнал меня.
4. Никто из моих соседей не слышал шума.
5. Неудивительно, что его поведение вызвало всеобщее подозрение.
6. Никто из студентов не дал на этот вопрос правильного ответа.
7. Кому-нибудь из вас удалось сфотографировать это животное?
8. Пьеса не понравилась никому из них.
9. Его слова вызвали негодование всех.
10. Никто из нас не захотел ехать на экскурсию в такой холодный дождливый день.
11. Кто-нибудь из вас играет на пианино?
12. Почему этот факт привлек внимание всех?
13. Никто из туристов не знал датского языка.
14. Кто-то из вас должен знать ответ на этот вопрос.
15. У каждого из моих друзей был мобильный телефон, но ни один из них не позвонил.

**Exercise 34. Underline the correct or more likely alternative.**

1. Harry, there aren't any real princes in the wizarding world! It's either a nickname, or a made-up title *somebody's* given themselves, or it could be *his/her/their* actual name, couldn't it? (J.K. Rowling)
2. 'Well, sir,' returned I, 'I hope you'll consider that Mrs Heathcliff is accustomed to be looked after and waited on; and that she has been brought up like an only daughter, whom *everyone/everybody* was ready to serve.'  
(E. Bronte)

3. Amazing how quickly *someone/somebody else's* problems become yours. (S. Grafton)
4. I must write to *someone/somebody*, and the only choice left me is you. (E. Bronte)
5. They both shake *his/her/their* head no. (Terry McMillan)
6. I thought, though *everybody* hated and despised each other, *he/she/they* could not avoid loving me. (E. Bronte)
7. On the other hand, if Tom did not show him something, Philip might assume Tom was not capable of designing, and might hire *someone/somebody* else without even considering Tom. (Ken Follett)
8. To keep *everybody/everyone* from knowing that he, Soames Forsyte, was reduced to having his wife spied on, was the overpowering consideration. (John Galsworthy)
9. 'Jill don't want to talk about it. Jill don't want *anyone/somebody* to know she got a spic baby.' (R.B. Parker)
10. And, suddenly conscious that *someone/somebody* nearly behind him had begun talking about his family, he screwed his face round to see an old bewigged buffer, who spoke as if he were eating his own words. (John Galsworthy)
11. On entering the house, I looked about for *some one/somebody* to give information of Catherine. (E. Bronte)
12. We were divorced. It was fine for him to see other people. I saw other people too. But this was *a somebody/anyone* else he'd met. (Robert B. Parker)
13. *Everyone/ everybody* was silent for a moment. (Robert B. Parker)
14. Not *everybody* uses *his/her/their* indicator.
15. *Somebody* left *his/her/their* keys. These aren't yours?
16. *Nobody* likes to admit that *he/she/they* entertain very little, or that *he/she/they* rarely enjoy it when *he/she/they* do.
17. I enjoyed not having to say anything to *anybody/ anyone*.
18. I've never trusted *anyone/anybody* in my life. (Jack Higgins)
19. Hannah was totally astonished. She'd expected an old man of eighty-five and instead found *someone/somebody* full of energy and life, still with some colour in his hair, wearing a black silk shirt and Armani slacks cut in the latest fashion. (Jack Higgins)
20. 'There's *someone/ somebody* waiting to see you.' 'Can you ask *him/her/them* to wait?'

## MOST/MOST OF

**MOST** precedes a noun denoting a whole class, it makes a general statement.

**MOST (OF)** precedes a noun denoting some members of a class. Sentences with **most of + definite article/ possessive pronoun/ noun in the possessive case** refer to a concrete situation. Compare:

- **Most travelers** are glad to be back home. **Most of the travelers** were glad to be back home.
- **Most dolphins** are easy to train. **Most of the dolphins** performed well.

*Exercise 35. Underline the correct or more likely alternative.*

1. Salzman had saved us a table in the corner, with space reserved for Jill Joyce when she arrived. *Most tables/ Most of the tables* seated twelve. (R.B. Parker)
2. *Most people/ most of the people* aren't that good at improvising. (S. Grafton)
3. I know you liked him. *Most women/ Most of the women* did. (S. Grafton)
4. *Most people/ most of the people* prefer to take a holiday in summer.
5. *Most clerks/ Most of the clerks* of the office wanted to go on holiday in summer.
6. *Most flowers/ most of the flowers* bloom in spring.
7. *Most tulips/ Most of the tulips* are in full bloom now.
8. *Most children/ most of the children* like sweets.
9. *Most children/ Most of the children* behaved well.
10. *Most Englishmen/ Most of the Englishmen* like gardening.
11. *In most countries/ most of the countries* traffic keeps to the right.
12. *Most famous people/ most of the people* are persistent.
13. *Most actors/ most of the actors* are publicity-conscious.
14. *Most men/ most of the men* want to dominate you. (Robert B. Parker)
15. I like *most types* of music/ *most of the types* of music.
16. *Most of the phone boxes/ most phone boxes* seemed to be vandalized.
17. *Most people/ most of the people* do their ordinary level exams at sixteen.
18. Well, I like to think I can turn my hand to *most things/ most of the things*. (Jack Higgins)
19. *Most people/ most of the people* want peace nowadays. (Jack Higgins)

20. *Most women/ most of the women* set out to try to change a man, and when he has changed they don't like him. (Marlene Dietrich)

### NO/ NONE (OF)/ NOT ANY

Study how we use **no** and **none** in these sentences:

<b>no + noun</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• She had <b>no shoes</b> on.</li> <li>• <b>No information</b> was given about how the study was conducted.</li> <li>• There's <b>no train</b> until tomorrow.</li> </ul>
<b>none + 'no noun'</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have we got any more sugar? There's <b>none</b> in the <b>kitchen</b>.</li> <li>• 'How many children have you got?' '<b>None.</b>'</li> </ul>

**NO/ NONE (OF) are used** instead of **NOT A** or **NOT ANY** to emphasise the negative idea in sentence. Compare:

- There isn't **a** key for this door. *or* There's **no** key for this door. (more emphatic)
- She didn't give me **any** help at all. *or* She gave me **no** help at all.
- Sorry, there **isn't any** left. *or* Sorry, there's **none** left.
- She **didn't** have **any of** the typical symptoms of cholera. *or* She had **none of** the typical symptoms of cholera.
  - **not any** is not used in initial position in a clause or sentence:
- **No** force was needed to make them move. (*not* Not any force was needed...)
- **None of** the children was/were awake. (*not* Not any of the children...)
  - in formal written English **no** and **none of** are used rather than **not any** or **...n't any**;
  - in a formal or literary style **not a** can be used in initial position in a clause or sentence (notice the word order here):
- **Not a** word would she say about the robbery.
- **Not a** sound came from the classroom.
  - After **no**, we use a *singular* noun in situations where we would expect one of something, and a *plural* noun where we would expect more than one. Compare:
- Since his resignation, the team has had **no manager**. (*rather than* ...had no managers.)
- I phoned Sarah at home, but there was **no** answer. (*rather than* ...were no answers.)
- There **were no biscuits** left. (*rather than* ...was no biscuit left.)
- He seems very lonely at school, and has **no friends**. (*rather than* ...no friend.)

- But sometimes we can use either a singular or plural noun with little difference in meaning:
    - **No answer** (*or answers*) could be found.
    - We want to go to the island but there's **no boat** (*or there are no boats*) to take us.
      - When we use **none of** with a plural noun the verb can be either singular or plural, although the singular form is usually more formal:
        - **None of the parcels have** arrived yet. (*or ...has arrived...*)
- However, when we use **none** with an uncountable noun the verb must be singular.
- If we want to give special emphasis to **no** or **none of** we can use phrases like **no amount of** with uncountable nouns and **not one (of)** with singular countable nouns:
    - She was so seriously ill that **no amount of** expensive treatment could cure her.
    - It was clear that **no amount of** negotiation would bring the employers and workers closer together.
    - **Not one** member **of** the History department attended the meeting.
    - **Not one of** the hundreds of families affected by the noise wants to move.

**Exercise 36. Complete these sentences in the most appropriate way using no + noun, none of + the + noun, or none + 'no noun'. Choose from the nouns below.**

<i>alternative</i>	<i>arguments</i>	<i>author</i>	<i>books</i>
<i>children</i>	<i>expense</i>	<i>solution</i>	<i>witnesses</i>

1. .... have actually seen Jones fire the gun.
2. When their teacher stood on his chair, ..... could understand what was happening.
3. The Democrats won a few seats in the south of the country, but .....in the north.
4. Changing jobs was ..... to her problems.
5. 'Do I really have to go and stay with Aunt Agatha?' 'Yes, I'm sorry, but there is .....
6. When she was asked what costs were involved, she replied, '..... at all.'
7. Many people have tried to persuade me to go into politics, but ..... has made me change my mind.

8. Once there were five banks along the main street, but now there are .....
9. .... has won the prize more than twice.
10. When I looked along the shelves, ..... seemed particularly interesting.
11. Of the ten most popular films this year, ..... was produced in Britain.
12. .... was spared to complete the building on time.

***Look again at the sentences in Exercise 36. Which of them can you rewrite to make less emphatic using ...n't any...?***

***Exercise 37. Correct these sentences if necessary.***

1. There were no dates on the jar to say when the jam should be eaten by.
2. Although he is French, none of his novels are set in France.
3. None of the information we were given were particularly helpful.
4. Although I put food out in the garden every day, no bird ever took it.
5. I phoned the booking office but they said they had no seat left for the concert.
6. Surprisingly, there was no police officer outside the embassy.
7. Seeing that the soldiers were carrying no weapons, I walked towards them.
8. None of the company's business are done in the US.
9. I'm afraid that none of the local newspapers make much of a profit now.
10. I phoned Sandra three times yesterday, but each time there were no answers.

***Exercise 38. Complete these sentences in any appropriate way beginning not one (of) or no amount of.***

1. I thought the exam paper I had set was quite easy, but .....
2. We wanted to buy John's car, but .....
3. I asked the children if someone would move the chairs, but .....
4. The damage to the paintings was so extensive that .....
5. My cousin Frank has written six novels, but .....
6. Although local residents say that they don't want the new supermarket to be built .....

***Exercise 39. Insert none, no or its compounds.***

1. On the day succeeding Isabella's unexpected visit, I had no opportunity of speaking to my master: he shunned conversation, and was fit for discussing ..... (E. Bronte)



2. 'Her senses never returned: she recognized ..... from the time you left her,' I said. (E. Bronte)
3. .... could have noticed the minute of his death, it was so entirely without a struggle. (E. Bronte)
4. '..... alive would regret me, or be ashamed, though I cut my throat this minute – and it's time to make an end. (E. Bronte)
5. She wants ..... of your tears. (E. Bronte)
6. 'You'll get ..... to take that, Catherine,' I said, 'if you write it; and at present I shall put out your candle.' (E. Bronte)
7. Heathcliff chuckled a fiendish laugh at the idea. I made no reply, because I saw that he expected ..... (E. Bronte)
8. .... loves you – ..... will cry for you when you die! (E. Bronte)
9. .... here care what becomes of him. (E. Bronte)
10. She had made him feel like a ....., a peasant; she had acted as if the Hamleights were a family of no account. (Ken Follett)
11. The place was filled with sunshine, and the door stood wide open; but ..... seemed at hand. (E. Bronte)
12. I want ..... of your prying at my house. (E. Bronte)
13. Mr Linton summoned me, and with great difficulty, and after resorting to many means, we managed to restore her to sensation; but she was all bewildered; she sighed, and moaned, and knew ..... (E. Bronte)
14. While drinks were being poured, various pleasantries were exchanged, ..... of them heartfelt. (S. Grafton)
15. An unwelcomed infant it was, poor thing! It might have wailed out of life, and ..... cared a morsel, during those first hours of existence. (E. Bronte)
16. The parents were both the only children of only children. There was ..... left. (S. Grafton)
17. '... I keep strictly within the limits of the law. I have avoided, up to this period, giving her the slightest right to claim separation; and what's more, she'd thank ..... for diving us.' (E. Bronte)
18. Already! that damned business which he had almost succeeded in forgetting, since ..... ever mentioned it. (John Galsworthy)
19. There was ..... humor in the laugh, nor pleasure, nor, for that matter, anything much in the way of humanity. (Robert B. Parker)

20. There was .....at the reception desk when Keogh entered the hotel.  
(Jack Higgins)

**MUCH/ MANY/ FEW/ A FEW/ LITTLE/ A LITTLE**  
**(A) FEW (OF), (A) LITTLE (OF)**

	<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>
(a) few (used with plural countable nouns)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I've got <b>a few</b> close friends that I meet regularly.</li> <li>• <b>A few</b> of her songs were popular and she was very well known.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• He has <b>few</b> close friends and feels lonely.</li> <li>• <b>Few</b> of her songs were very popular and eventually she gave up her musical career.</li> </ul>
(a) little (used with uncountable nouns)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I have to go now, I have <b>a little</b> work to do.</li> <li>• We had <b>a little</b> money left, so we went out for a meal.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There was <b>little</b> work to do, so I didn't earn much money.</li> <li>• We decided to abandon our trip as we had <b>little</b> money left.</li> </ul>

- **A FEW (OF), A LITTLE (OF)** are used in a 'positive' way; for example, to talk about a small amount or quantity, to indicate that this is enough, or suggest that it is more than we would expect.
- **FEW (OF), LITTLE (OF)** are used in a 'negative' way; for example, to suggest that the amount or quantity is not enough, is surprisingly low. This use of few and little is often rather formal.
- We can also use **few** and **little** with **the, her, my**, etc. in a similar 'negative' way:
  - She put **her few clothes** into a bag, and walked out of the house for ever.
  - We should use **the little time** we have available to discuss Jon's proposal.
    - In speech or informal writing, it is more usual to use **not many/much** or **only a few/little** instead of **few** and **little**, and we often use **a bit of** in informal speech instead of **a little**:
  - I won't be long. I've **only** got **a few** things to get. (*rather than ...got few things...*)
  - Sorry I haven't finished, I **haven't** had **much** time today. (*rather than ...I had little time...*)
  - Do you want **a bit of** chocolate? (*rather than ...a little chocolate?*)
    - In more formal contexts, such as academic writing, we generally prefer **few** and **little**:
  - The results take **little** account of personal preference. (*rather than ...don't take much...*)

**Exercise 40. Complete the sentences with (a) few (of), (a) little (of), the few, or the little.**

1. Although the play is set in Italy, ..... the characters are Italian.
2. Jim, Bill, Sue and Gill were just .....those who came to say goodbye.
3. I saw him first ..... after midnight.
4. Unfortunately, much of the early history of Zimbabwe is still unknown. For example, we know ..... about the early patterns of settlement.
5. Because it was cheap, and we didn't have much money, .....us used to go to the cinema every Saturday morning.
6. It will take .....time, but I'm sure you'll learn the rules of cricket eventually.
7. Stephen and ..... his friends were waiting for us in the park.
8. The play was poorly attended, but ..... people who came had a very good evening.
9. Many questions were asked, but ..... were answered.
10. The soldiers seemed to have ..... idea who they were fighting against or why.
11. After the plane crashed in the desert, the survivors divided .....water they had left between them.
12. I'd like to say ..... words about the performance.
13. I gave her ..... wine. (E. Bronte)
14. Could you spare me ..... minutes?
15. May I ask you ..... questions?

**Exercise 41. Where you think it is appropriate, suggest changes to these examples from conversations and from academic writing.**

<i>from conversations</i>	<i>from academic writing</i>
1. 'Can you lend me £100?' 'I'm sorry. I have little money myself.'	5. Not many researchers have examined complaints made by male consumers.
2. You can help yourself to biscuits, although there are few left.	6. Scientists still don't know very much about the complex mechanisms of volcanic eruptions
3. I usually have few days off work, but I felt very tired and had little energy, so I stayed at home.	7. Not much attention has been given to understanding how teaching is evaluated.

4. Have you got a little string to wrap this parcel up?

8. Not many studies have specifically explored marketing strategies during economic recession.

**Exercise 42. Choose the correct alternative.**

1. Do you have any idea how (much, many) money we're talking about? (S. Grafton)
2. In the last twenty-four hours too (little, many) things had happened.
3. Philip had (few, little) friends.
4. There was (little, many) time to think.
5. Martin spent so (much, many) time in the hospital.
6. In the next (few, little) days Irene felt a change.
7. 'Why does my blood rush into a hell of tumult at (a few, few) words?' (E. Bronte)
8. I noticed (little, few) emotion in his voice — maybe he was past it, I thought.
9. He had very (little, many) money, barely sixteen hundred pounds, and it would be necessary for him to practice the severest economy.
10. It was a hot day and there were (many, much) flies in the room.
11. Yellow gleams of lamplight showed in the stores and houses which remained in the village, but they were (little, few).
12. He was there – at least (a few, few) yards further is the park. (E. Bronte)
13. How (much, many) is the clock fast now?
14. (few, little) of the eighty thousand passengers who flew in and out each day were aware of how inadequate the runway system had become.
15. 'And as to you, Catherine, I have a mind to speak (a few, few) words now, while we are at it.' (E. Bronte)
16. 'Nonsense!' said I, 'do you imagine he has thought as (much, many) of you as you have of him?' (E. Bronte)
17. 'My name is Kinsey Millhone. Could I have (few, a few) minutes of your time?' (Sue Grafton)
18. 'I'm saying maybe you need get help. (Few, A few) words of advice from me won't make you change your needs.' (Robert B. Parker)
19. In (a few, few) moments Richie came back carrying coffee in two large white mugs. (Robert B. Parker)

20. 'No problem,' Mori told him. 'I'll make (few, a few) calls.' (Jack Higgins)

**Exercise 43. Don and his family are from England, but have been living in New Zealand for the last year. Here are some parts of a letter he recently wrote to his sister. Fill in the gaps with:**

*some or some of      any or any of      much or much of      many or many of*  
*all or all of      both or both of      each or each of      none or none of*  
*(a) few or (a) few of      (a) little or (a) little of.*

Wellington, December 1st.

Dear Helen

Greetings from New Zealand! Sorry I haven't written recently, but I haven't had (1) ..... time. We've done (2) ..... travelling during our stay. We've visited the South Island twice, and also (3) ..... the (4)..... small islands that make up the country. (5) ..... the west of the South Island is mountainous, but the east is quite flat and full of sheep! I'd never seen that (6) ..... in one place before. The weather was good when we went and we had very (7) ..... rain...

...Before I came here, I didn't know that New Zealand had (a) ..... ski slopes. But (9) ..... people here seem to spend most of their winter skiing.

(10) ..... us had skied before, so we were pretty awful. Susan learned quickly though, and after (11) ..... falls she became quite confident...

...(12) ..... the children send their love. They've grown a lot and I suppose they'll look (13) ..... different to you when you see them again. (14) ..... Susan and Tim really like it here. They've made (15) ..... very good friends, and (16) ..... they are planning to come over to England soon...

...You asked about the animals here. No, we haven't seen (17) ..... snakes - there are (18) ..... in New Zealand! In fact, (19) ..... the animals in New Zealand were originally from here, (20) ..... were introduced from overseas - (21) ..... them, like the rabbit, from Europe...And yes, we really did see (22) ..... whales...

So you heard about the volcano! There are three main volcanoes on the North Island, and (23) ..... them is still active. But I think we're quite safe here in Wellington...

...(24) ..... the people I work with are Maori. Almost (25) ..... them live on the North Island, with very (26) ..... apparently, on the South Island.

(27) ..... the Maori we've met have spoken English, although I've been told that just (28) ..... speak only the Maori language.

...If you see (29) ..... our friends in England, tell them we'll see them  
 (30) ..... soon. Although (31) ..... them said they would try to  
 visit us, (32) ..... them did. Only Bob, Jenny and Paul came. We'll be  
 really sorry to leave the (33) ..... good friends we've made here...  
 ... Things are going to get even busier as we pack up to come home, and there'll  
 be (34) ..... chance to write in the next couple of weeks. So this will  
 probably be my last letter before we see you again.  
 Love to (35) ..... the family,  
 Don, Mary, Susan and Tim

## ONE

**ONE** can function as:

- a numeral;
- an indefinite noun-pronoun: stands for any person including the speaker or writer, synonymous with the less formal 'you'. It has case distinction: the common and the genitive case;
- an indefinite adjective-pronoun: used with the meaning of 'a certain';
- a prop-word or replacive: stands for countable nouns. It has number distinction.

**NOTE:** the little one, the young one means 'the child'; also the young of animals.

### ***Exercise 44. Define the meaning and function of the pronoun one.***

1. I had my gun on in case *one* of the squirrels got aggressive, and the three dogs raced out ahead of us, crisscrossing as we went, snuffing the ground and occasionally treeing *one* of the squirrels. (R.B. Parker)
2. I was the *one* who insisted we befriend her. (S. Grafton)
3. I made *one* stop in town and mentioned Guy in passing to the woman who runs the general store. (S. Grafton)
4. He might be coming to visit me *one* afternoon in the very near future so don't act surprised when you see us sitting in the living room entertaining each other. (Terry McMillan)
5. I promised mamma that I wouldn't say *one* word to him, and I didn't. (E. Bronte)
6. 'Are you acquainted with the mood of mind in which, if you were seated alone, and the cat licking its kitten on the rug before you, you would watch the operation so intently that puss's neglect of *one* ear would put you seriously out of temper?' 'A terribly lazy mood, I should say.' 'On the contrary, a tiresomely active *one*. It is mine, at present.' (E. Bronte)

7. Well, we must be for ourselves in the long run; the mild and generous are only more justly selfish than the domineering; and it ended when the circumstances caused each to feel that the *one's* interest was not the chief consideration in the other's thoughts. (E. Bronte)
8. And he stared hard at the object of discourse, as *one* might do at a strange repulsive animal: a centipede from the Indies, for instance, which curiosity leads *one* to examine in spite of the aversion it raises. (E. Bronte)
9. 'I am come to see thy father, Hareton,' I added, guessing from the action that Nelly, if she lived in his memory at all, was not recognized as *one* with me. (E. Bronte)
10. Heathcliff had knelt on *one* knee to embrace her; he attempted to rise, but she seized his hair, and kept him down. (E. Bronte)
11. 'Well,' said the scoundrel, 'we'll not argue the subject now: but I have a fancy to try my hand at rearing *a young one*; so intimate to your master that I must supply the place of his with my own, if he attempt to remove it.' (E. Bronte)
12. You are the *one* to be blamed: he is willing to let us be friends, at least; Linton and I; and you are not. (E. Bronte)
13. 'But how can *one* little note –' she recommenced, putting on an imploring countenance. (E. Bronte)
14. *One* day, as she inspected this drawer, I observed that the playthings and trinkets, which recently formed its contents, were transmuted into bits of folded paper. (E. Bronte)
15. From dinner to tea she would lie in her breeze-rocked cradle, doing nothing except singing old songs – my nursery lore – to herself, or watching the birds, joint tenants, feed and entice their young *ones* to fly. (E. Bronte)
16. *One* time, however we were near quarrelling. (E. Bronte)
17. 'Can't you block her number?' 'She doesn't have *one*.' (Terry McMillan)
18. Her affection for him was still the chief sentiment in her heart; and he spoke without anger: he spoke in the deep tenderness of *one* about to leave his treasure amid perils and foes, where his remembered words would be the only aid that he could bequeath to guide her. (E. Bronte)
19. I was going to the Grange *one* evening and, just at the turn of the Heights, I encountered a little boy with a sheep and two lambs before him. (E. Bronte)
20. It was hard to leave so many shining boots, but *one* must sacrifice something. (John Galsworthy)
21. But he still knew a diamond when he saw *one*, and during the week before her birthday he had taken occasion, on his way into the Poultry or his way

- out therefrom, to dally a little before the greater jewellers where *one* got, if not *one's* money worth, at least a certain cachet with the goods. (John Galsworthy)
22. 'A good heart will help you to a bonny face, my lad,' I continued, 'if you were a regular black; and a bad *one* will turn the bonniest into something worse and ugly.' (E. Bronte)
  23. How mysterious women were! *One* lived alongside and knew nothing of them. (John Galsworthy)
  24. I'll only ask *one* thing. I just want – I just want a son. Don't look like that! I want *one*.' (John Galsworthy)
  25. Artists, of course, were notoriously Hamlet-like, and to this extent *one* must discount for *one's* father, even if *one* loved him. (John Galsworthy)
  26. *One* might as well have been named Morkin for all the covert it afforded! (John Galsworthy)
  27. So matters went on, till *one* day in the middle of January the silver-roan palfrey and its rider were missing at the tryst. (John Galsworthy)
  28. *One* could not be always fighting with her brother! (John Galsworthy)
  29. It seemed to Val unspeakably disgusting to have *one's* name called out like this in public! (John Galsworthy)
  30. 'She knows of my feeling for her, then,' he thought. Of course! *One* could not keep knowledge of that from such a woman. (John Galsworthy)
  31. 'But yes; I had not the time. How is *my little one*?'  
 'Doing well – both. A girl!'  
 'A girl! What joy! I had a frightful crossing!' (John Galsworthy)

### RESTRICTIONS IN THE USE ON THE PROP-WORD ONE

**One** is used instead of repeating a singular countable noun when it is clear from the context what we are talking about:

- 'Can I get you a drink?' 'It's okay, I've already got **one** (= a drink).'
- 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, mine's the big blue **one** (= umbrella).'

**Ones** can be used instead of repeating a plural noun:

- I think his best poems are his early **ones** (= poems).
- People who smoke aren't the only **ones** (= people) affected by lung cancer.

**NOTE:** The form **ONES** is not used without additional information (e.g. *small ones*, **ones** with blue *laces*). Instead, **SOME** is used. Compare:

- We need new curtains. Okay, let's buy *green ones* this time/...ones *with flowers on*:
- We need new curtains. Okay, let's buy **some**. (*not* ...let's buy ones.)



### ONE/ONES IS NOT USED:

- instead of an uncountable noun (the prop-word originates from the numeral 'one'):
- If you need any more paper, I'll bring you some. (*not* ...one/ones.)
- I asked him to get apple juice, but he got orange. (*not* ...orange one/ones.)
  - after **a** - instead we leave out **a**:
- Have we got any lemons? I need one for a meal I'm cooking. (*not* ...need a one...)
  - after nouns used as adjectives:
- I thought I'd put the keys in my trouser pocket, but in fact they were in my jacket pocket. (*not* ...my jacket one)
  - instead of using one/ones after conjoint form of possessive pronouns we prefer absolute form of possessive pronouns. However, a personal pronoun + one/ones is often heard in informal speech:
- I'd really like a watch like yours. (*or* '...like your one' in informal speech)
  - instead of using one to replace a definite object we prefer **it**, **one** replaces any object of the class. Compare:
- 'I need *a camera*.' 'Why don't you buy **one**'?
- 'I like *the camera*.' 'So buy **it**.'
  - one adjective is contrasted with another:
- His hands rested on the table between us, **the right one** on top of **the left** (Robert B. Parker Shrink Rap p. 1)
  - when adjectives follow in enumeration;
  - after a possessive pronoun followed by *own*.

### ONE/ONES CAN BE LEFT OUT:

- after *which*:
- When we buy medicines, we have no way of knowing *which* (ones) contain sugar.
  - after adjectives in the comparative or superlative degrees:
- Look at that pumpkin! It's the *biggest* (one) I've seen this year.
- If you buy a new car, remember that the *most economical* (ones) are often the *smallest*.
  - after *this, that, these, and those*:
- The last test I did was quite easy, but some parts of *this* (one) are really difficult.
- Help yourself to grapes. *These* (ones) are the sweetest, but *those* (ones) taste best. (Note that some people think 'those ones' is incorrect, particularly in formal English.)
  - after *either, neither, another, each, the first/second/last/next*, etc. (the forms without **one/ones** are more formal):

- Karl pointed to the paintings and said I could take *either* (one). (*or ...either of them.*)
- She cleared away the cups, washed *each* (one) thoroughly, and put them on the shelf.

**ONE/ONES CAN NOT BE LEFT OUT:**

➤ after *the, the only, the main, and every*:

- When you cook clams you shouldn't eat *the ones* that don't open.
- After I got the glasses home, I found that *every one* was broken.
  - after adjectives:
- My shoes were so uncomfortable that I had to go out today and buy some *new ones*.  
However, after colour adjectives we can often leave out **one/ones** in answers:
- 'Have you decided which jumper to buy?' 'Yes, I think I'll take the *blue* (one).'

***Exercise 45. If necessary, correct the following sentences.***

1. We'd like to buy a new car, but we'll never be able to afford ones.
2. Many of the questions are difficult, so find the easier some and do those first.
3. We had an orchard, so when we ran out of apples, we could just go and pick ones.
4. Help yourself to more nuts if you want ones.
5. Only time will tell if the decisions we have taken are the correct ones.
6. I haven't got an electric drill, but I could borrow some from Joseph.
7. 'Which is Avice, the young one or the old one?' – 'The young one.'
8. He gripped the edge of the table, and dizzily saw Annette come forward, her eyes clear with surprise. He shut his own ones and said. (John Galsworthy)
9. Let me hope my constitution is almost peculiar: my dear mother used to say I should never have a comfortable home; and only last summer I proved myself perfectly unworthy of it. (E. Bronte)
10. He felt her warm hand slip into his. (John Galsworthy)

***Exercise 46. If possible, replace the underlined words or phrases with one/ones.***

1. Their marriage was a long and happy marriage.

2. We've got most of the equipment we need, but there are still some small pieces of equipment we have to buy.
3. Traffic is light in most of the city, but there is heavy traffic near the football stadium.
4. 'Are these your shoes?' 'No, the blue shoes are mine.'
5. All the cakes look good, but I think I'll have that cake on the left.
6. I was hoping to borrow a suit from Chris, but his suit doesn't fit me.
7. If you're making a cup of coffee, could you make a cup of coffee for me?
8. If you're buying a newspaper from the shop, could you get a newspaper for me?
9. At present, the music industry is in a better financial state than the film industry.
10. Nowadays, many people have a mobile phone, but I've never used a mobile phone.
11. Have you seen that the clothes shop on the corner has re-opened as a shoe shop?
12. 'Which oranges would you like?' 'Can I have those oranges, please?'
13. 'We haven't got any oranges.' 'I'll buy some oranges when I go to the shop.'
14. The damage to the car was a problem, of course, but an easily solved problem.
15. He has interviewed my friends — the friends I have now and the friends who have been with me in former years.
16. Two more buses came up and pulled in behind the first bus.
17. My heart is beating so fast I wish I didn't have a heart. (Terry McMillan)
18. 'Some of these questions are stupid.' 'Which questions, Lovey?' 'You know which questions.' (Terry McMillan)
19. I have had my great passion; her passion is perhaps to come – I don't suppose it will be for me. (John Galsworthy)

***Exercise 47. If the sentence is correct without one/ones, put brackets around it. If it is not correct without one/ones, leave the sentence as it is.***

1. The government has produced a number of reports on violence on television, the most recent one only six months ago.
2. The zoo is the only one in the country where you can see polar bears.
3. In a pack there are 26 red cards and 26 black ones.

4. I have my maths exam tomorrow morning, but I've already prepared for that one.
5. Australia may have the most poisonous spiders, but the biggest ones live in Asia.
6. These strawberries aren't as good as the ones we grow ourselves.
7. It was made for one of the early kings of Sweden, but I don't remember which one.
8. The floods destroyed some smaller bridges, but left the main ones untouched.
9. Jo Simons has written 13 stories for children, every one totally gripping.
10. The protesters held another demonstration this weekend that was even bigger and more successful than the first one.
11. 'I'm spending the weekend going to some of the London art galleries.' 'Which ones are you planning to visit?'
12. The film on TV tonight doesn't look very interesting. There was a good one on last night, though.
13. Then I suppose he addresses his letters to the people who are to read them. And this one is addressed to Isabel.
14. 'Count backward from a hundred by sevens. Just do as much as you can.' 'I ain't never been good in math. Give me an easier one.' (Terry McMillan)
15. The floor was of smooth, white stone; the chairs, high-backed, primitive structures, painted green: one or two heavy black ones lurking in the shade. (E. Bronte)
16. This feather was picked up from the heath, the bird was not shot: we saw its nest in the winter, full of little skeletons. Heathcliff set a trap over it, and the old ones dare not come. (E. Bronte)
17. I beg to differ with you. Anyway, he's not the only one in his forties around here nor does he have a cap on being emotionally frazzled or overly sensitive. (Terry McMillan)
18. He made no reply to this adjuration; only plodding doggedly down the wooden steps, and halting before an apartment which, from that halt and the superior quality of its furniture, I conjectured to be the best one. (E. Bronte)
19. But I already know how to spell all the words and even the ones for extra credit. (Terry McMillan)
20. There was a carpet: a good one, but the pattern was obliterated by dust. (E. Bronte)

## AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE SUBJECT AND THE PREDICATE

- In English the predicate usually agrees with the subject even if the predicate is separated from its subject by prepositional phrases, relative clauses, brackets or commas. However, if the predicate is a long way from the subject but is closer to the predicative, it is possible to agree the predicate with the predicative. Compare:
  - The most exciting **event** *was* the rowing finals.
  - The most exciting **event** in the Sydney Olympics for most British viewers *was* (**or were**) the rowing **finals**.
    - The same can apply after *a subject clause* introduced by 'what':
  - **What** the Board needs to address now *is* (**or are**) the terms of redundancies.
    - When there are two or more homogeneous subjects connected by the conjunction *and* or *asyndetically*, we usually use *a plural verb*:
  - **Jean and David** *are* moving back to Australia.
    - However, phrases connected by *and* can also be followed by singular verbs if we think of them as making up a single item, a close unit. Noun combinations of this kind have a fixed order of words:
      - **Meat pie and peas** *is* Tom's favourite at the moment. (**or** Meat pie and peas **are**)
      - **Fish and chips** *is* one of the most common English dishes. (**but** Fish and chips *make* a good meal.)
- Other phrases like this include **needle and thread**, **research and development** (or **R and D**), **bacon and eggs**, **bread and butter**, **lemon and oil**, **cheese and wine**, **tripe and onions**, **sausage(s) and mash**, etc.
  - When two or more homogeneous subjects are expressed *by infinitives* the predicate is *in the singular*:
    - **To leave** the quiet court, **to gain** the Strand, **to hail** a belated hansom *was* the work of a moment. (Thurston)
      - When the predicate-verb *precedes a number of subjects* it is often *in the singular*, especially if the sentence begins with *here* or *there*:
    - And **here** *was* a man, *was* experience and culture. (Galsworthy)
      - If the subjects are of different number the predicate agrees with the subject that stands first.
    - There *was* **much traffic** at night and **many mules** on the roads with boxes of ammunition on each of their pack saddles.
      - When there are two homogeneous subjects connected by the conjunctions **not only ... but also**, **either ...or...**, **neither ... nor...**, **or**, **nor** we use a singular verb if the last item is singular (although

a plural verb is sometimes used in informal English), and a plural verb if it is plural:

- **Either the station or the cinema** *is* a good place to meet. (*or ...are...* in informal English)
- **Either my brother or my parents** *are going* to bring the sleeping bags.
  - If the last item is singular and the previous item plural, we can use a singular or plural verb.
- **Either** the teachers **or** the principal *is* (*or are*) to blame for the accident.
- Whether interest rates **or** intervention *were* the chosen instrument, and in what combination, was probably a secondary question.
  - When two subjects in the singular are connected by the conjunction **as well as**, the predicate is *in the singular*. However, if the subjects are of different person or number, the predicate agrees with the subject that stands first.
- **Activity** as well as **cell structure** *is* an essential condition of life. (Young)
  - If a subject expressed by a noun is modified by two or more *attributes* connected by *and*, the predicate is *in the singular* when one person, thing, or idea is meant, and the predicate is *in the plural* if two or more persons, things, or ideas are meant.
- **The complete and beautiful** quiet *was* almost the quiet from beyond the grave. (Stone)
- **Classical and light music** *have* both their admirers.
  - If the subject is expressed by **the emphatic it** the predicate is *in the singular* no matter what follows.
- **It** *is* only my friends who could help me.
  - If the subject is expressed by **a noun in the plural which is the title of a book, or the name of a newspaper or magazine**, the predicate is usually *in the singular*.
- **Hitchcock's film 'The Birds'** *is based* on a story by Daphne du Maurier.
  - Some phrases with a plural form are thought of as a single thing and have a *singular verb*. These include phrases referring to **measurements, amounts and quantities, time, distance**:
- About **three metres** *separates* the runners in first and second places.
- The **fifty pounds** he gave me *was* soon spent.
  - If the subject is expressed by **a collective noun** denoting a group or collection of similar individuals taken as a whole the predicate – verb is *in the singular*.
- **Humanity** *was* better than he thought.
- **Mankind** *is* all of us.
  - If the subject is expressed by **a noun of multitude**, i.e. a collective noun denoting the individuals of the group taken separately the predicate-verb is *in the plural*.

- **The police** *are asking* them to come forward. (J.H. Chase)
  - If the subject is expressed by a word-group consisting of two nouns connected by **the preposition with**, or the expression **together with**, the predicate-verb is in *the singular*:
- The president **together with** his cabinet members, *is meeting* the African Trade Delegation.
  - If the subject is expressed by a group of words denoting **arithmetic calculations** (addition, subtraction, division), the predicate is usually *singular*; **multiplication** presents an exception as the verb may be in the *singular* or in the *plural*.
- **Two and two** *is* four.
- **Six minus four** *is* two.
- **Twenty divided by five** *equals* four.
- **Twice two** *is (are)* four.
  - After **per cent** (also **percent** or %) we use a singular verb:
- An inflation rate of only 2 per cent **makes** a big difference to exports.
- Around 10 per cent of the forest **is destroyed** each year.
  - However, in phrases where we can use **of + plural noun** we use a plural verb:
- I would say that about 50 per cent *of the houses* **need** major repairs.
- Of those interviewed, only 20 per cent (= of people interviewed) **admit** to smoking.
  - But where we use a singular noun that can be thought of either as a whole unit or a collection of individuals, we can use a singular or plural verb:
- Some 80 per cent *of the electorate* **is** expected to vote. (*or ...are expected...*)

<p>With <b>any of, each of, either of, neither of, or none of</b> and a <b>plural noun</b> we can use a <i>singular</i> or <i>plural</i> verb. However, we prefer a singular verb in careful written English.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I don't think <b>any</b> of them <i>knows</i> (or <i>know</i>) where the money is hidden.</li> <li>• <b>Neither of</b> the French athletes <i>has</i> (or <i>have</i>) won this year.</li> </ul>
<p>With <b>a/the majority of, a number of, a variety of, a lot of, plenty of, a mass of, all (of), or some (of)</b> and a <b>plural noun</b> we use a <i>plural</i> verb. But if we say <b>the number of, the variety of</b> we use a <i>singular</i> verb.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>A number of</b> refugees <i>have been turned</i> back at the border.</li> <li>• <b>The number of</b> books in the library <i>has risen</i> to over five million.</li> </ul>
<p>With <b>any of, none of, the majority of, a lot of, plenty of, all (of), some (of)</b> and an <b>uncountable noun</b> we use a <i>singular</i> verb.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All</b> the furniture <i>was</i> destroyed in the fire.</li> </ul>

With <b>each</b> and <b>every</b> and a <b>singular noun</b> we use a <i>singular</i> verb. (For <b>each of</b> , see above.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Every</b> room <i>has</i> its own bathroom. <i>but</i></li> <li>• The boys <i>have</i> <b>each</b> drawn a picture.</li> </ul>
With <b>everyone</b> , <b>everybody</b> , <b>everything</b> (and similar words beginning any-, some- and no-) we use a <i>singular</i> verb.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Practically <b>everyone</b> <i>thinks</i> that Judith should be given the job.</li> </ul>
With interrogative pronouns <b>who</b> , <b>what</b> we usually use a <i>singular</i> verb. But if the question refers <b>to more than one person</b> the predicate may be used in the <i>plural</i> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Who</b> <i>is</i> coming?</li> <li>• <b>What</b> <i>was</i> there in him that made you trust him? <i>but</i></li> <li>• <b>Who</b> <i>were</i> those people?</li> </ul>
With relative pronouns <b>who</b> , <b>which</b> , <b>that</b> the predicate agrees with their antecedents.	
With the subject expressed by the word-group <b>many a</b> the verb is in the <i>singular</i> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Many an artist</b> <i>comes</i> there.</li> </ul>

**Exercise 1. Complete the sentences with either is/are or has/have. If both singular and plural forms are possible, write them both.**

1. A number of shoppers ..... complained about the price increases.
2. I can assure you that everything ..... perfectly safe.
3. Either of the dentists ..... available. Which one do you want to see?
4. The majority of primary school teachers ..... women.
5. Each of Susan's colleagues ..... sent her a personal letter of support.
6. Although some people find cricket boring, each match ..... different.
7. We've got two cars, but neither of them ..... particularly new.
8. All the office staff .....agreed to work late tonight to get the job finished.
9. A lot of the pollution ..... caused by the paper factory on the edge of town.
10. None of the TV programmes ..... worth watching tonight.
11. Researchers have reported that neither of the so-called 'environmentally friendly' fuels ..... less damaging than petrol or diesel.
12. I hope everyone ..... a good holiday. See you next term.



13. The number of pupils in school with reading difficulties ..... fallen this year.
14. Some people ..... the strangest hobbies. My brother collects bottles!
15. None of the information ..... particularly useful to me.
16. What he'd really like us to buy him for his birthday ..... some new Nike trainers.
17. A large number of police officers ..... present at the demonstration last week in case of trouble.
18. At present 10,000 kilometres ..... the longest walking competition held in the Olympics.
19. Either the twins or John, the eldest brother, ..... going to make a speech at the Golden Wedding party.
20. Both my brother and sister ..... lived in this town all their lives.
21. Neither her sons nor her daughter ..... a piano.
22. Pollution, together with water erosion, ..... taking its toll on the buildings.

***Exercise 2. Explain why the predicate – verb is used in the singular or in the plural.***

1. The family **were** still at table, but they had finished breakfast. (Twain)
2. Our family **has** never **been** religious. (S. Grafton)
3. There **was** a crowd of soldiers along the fence in the infield. (Hemingway)
4. ... the band **was stopped**, the crowd **were** partially **quieted**, and Horatio Fizkin, Esquire, was permitted to proceed. (Dickens)
5. Down by the Embankment... a band of unemployed **were trailing** dismally with money-boxes. (Galsworthy)
6. The multitude **have** something else to do than to read hearts and interpret dark sayings. (Ch. Bronte)
7. The newly married pair, on their arrival in Harley Street, Cavendish Square, London **were received** by the chief butler. (Dickens)
8. There **was** a dreaminess, a preoccupation, an exaltation, in the maternal look which the girl could not understand. (Hardy)
9. The company **are** cool and calm. (Dickens)
10. There **were** still two hours of daylight before them. (Aldington)
11. Twenty-four hours **is** a long time in politics.

12. At last they came into a maze of dust, where a quantity of people **were tumbling** over one another... (Dickens)
13. Tom's whole class **were** of a pattern-restless, noisy and troublesome. (Twain)
14. A group of men **were standing** guarded by carabinieri. (Hemingway)
15. The loving couple **were** no longer happy. (Reade)
16. There was a serving counter set up along one side, and tables with folding chairs filled the room. The crew **was** spread out, down parkas hanging from chair backs, down vests tossed on the floor, hunched over trays eating. (R.B. Parker)
17. And the crew of this Siemens ferry? What **are they doing**? (Jack Higgins)
18. Sam, along with other students, **plans** on protesting the change in academic requirements.

***Exercise 3. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the correct form of the verb. Pay attention to the rules of agreement.***

1. Official news (to be) brief.
2. The New York Times (to be), as usual, dryly factual.
3. Have some bread and butter. The bread and butter (to be) on the counter.
4. A box as well as a book (to be stolen).
5. The wedding party (to be forced) to abandon their cars and literally to fight their way into the Old Town Hall on foot.
6. The cattle (to be all gone), probably driven off.
7. It utterly spoils an excursion if you have folk in the boat who (to be thinking) all the time a good deal more of their dress than of the trip.
8. His yacht struck a reef and sank somewhere off the North of Scotland; and he managed to swim to an uninhabited island. All the rest (to be drowned.)
9. None of them (to be going) to get against me.
10. The Himalayas (to be) the eastern end of a great series of folded mountains.
11. The country can ill afford an operation that would permit others to argue that The United States (not to respect) international law.
12. It is I who (to be buying) this house.
13. Forty years (to have brought) sweeping changes to our life.
14. *The Merry Wives of Windsor* (to be) one of the best comedies in English literature.

15. I don't care what your family (to say). It's all their doing. I am going to live a new life.
16. Forty guineas for a room each week (to be) not an uncommon figure at that time.
17. My brother as well as I (to be) ready to accompany you to the station.
18. Three metres (to be) not enough for this dress.
19. It (to be) his stories that amused me so much.
20. Who (to be) these people?
21. There's just one or two little things that (to be worrying) me, Doctor.
22. I've never seen anything quite like that meeting; every man, woman, and child in the city (to be) there.
23. Harry and I (to be) pals all our lives.
24. The majority of the people (to have) their minds made up.
25. In this confounded hole everybody – and there (be) a good many of them – seemed sitting on everybody else's knee, though really divided from each other by pews; and Val had a feeling that they might all slip down together into the well. (John Galsworthy)
26. Roast beef and Yorkshire pudding (be) definitely still the favourite of many British people.
27. Saudi Arabia, along with most of the oil-producing nations, (to have voted) to raise the price of crude oil again.
28. What they should now address (to be) the questions of VAT and fuel tax.
29. There (to be) a number of rowing-boats already pulling round her. (Daphne du Maurier)
30. The anxiety and anger (to be taken away) then and suddenly erupts in the family environment, placing stress on other members of the household.

***Exercise 4. Use the appropriate form of the verb.***

1. Huckleberry's hard pantings .....his only reply. (was, were) (Twain)
2. There .....many a true word spoken in jest, Mr. Cocane. (is, are) (Shaw)
3. Each of us .....afraid of the sound of his name. (was, were) (Bennett)
4. On such meetings five minutes .....the time allotted to each speaker. (was, were) (London)
5. Neither his father nor his mother.....like other people. (was, were) (Dreiser)

6. It was dark and quiet. Neither moon nor stars.....visible. (was, were) (Collins)
7. Plenty of girls.....taken to me like daughters and cried at leaving me. (has, have) (Shaw)
8. He and I ..... nothing in common. (has, have) (Galsworthy)
9. But I wonder no wealthy nobleman or gentleman ..... taken a fancy to her: Mr. Rochester, for instance. (has, have) (Ch. Bronte)
10. To be the busy wife of a busy man, to be the mother of many children ....., to his thinking, the highest lot of woman. (was, were) (Trollope)
11. Her family ..... of a delicate constitution: she and Edgar both lacked the ruddy health that you will generally meet in these parts. (E. Bronte) (was, were)
12. Hers ..... a large family. (was, were)
13. ‘Well,’ says my lady, ‘..... the police coming?’ (is, are) (Collins)
14. Nobody ..... I am here. (knows, know) (London)
15. But after all, who .....the right to cast a stone against one who ..... suffered? (has, have; has, have) (Wilde)
16. There are men who .....dominion from the nature of their disposition, and who ..... so from their youth upwards, without knowing that any power of dominion belongs to them. (exercises, exercise; does, do) (Trollope)
17. Plain United States ..... good enough for me. (is, are) (London)
18. He half started as he became aware that someone near at hand ..... gazing at him. (was, were) (Aldington)
19. Fattening cattle ..... from 5 to 10 gallons of water a head daily. (consume, consumes) (Black)
20. She is supposed to have all the misfortunes and all the virtues to which humanity ..... subject. (is, are) (Trollope)
21. It was a market-day, and the country people .....all assembled with their baskets of poultry, eggs and such things. (was, were) (Thackeray)
22. The precept as well as the practice of the Primitive Church .....distinctly against matrimony. (was, were) (Wilde)
23. ...Ratterer and Hegglund..., as well as most of the others, .....satisfied that there was not another place in all Kansas City that was really as good. (was, were) (Dreiser)
24. Twelve years ..... a long time. (is, are) (Galsworthy)

25. There ..... a great many ink bottles. (was, were) (Dickens)
26. May and I ..... just friends. (is, are) (Keating)
27. The bread and butter ..... for Gwendolen. (is, are) (Wilde)
28. I am afraid it is quite clear, Cecily, that neither of us .....engaged to be married to anyone. (is, are) (Wilde)
29. It ..... they that should honour you. (is, are) (Trollope)
30. *Great Expectations* by Dickens ..... published in 1860. (was, were)
31. The family party ..... seated round the table in the dark wainscoted parlour. (was, were) (Eliot)
32. Everybody ..... clever nowadays. (is, are) (Wilde)
33. There ..... a number of things, Martin, that you don't understand. (is, are) (Wilde)
34. It ..... the people that make a place, isn't it? (K. Saunders) (is, are)
35. Her hair, which ..... fine and of medium brown shade, .....brushed smoothly across the top of her head and then curled a little at each side. (was, were; was, were) (Priestley)
36. After some apologies, which ..... perhaps too soft and sweet the great man thus opened the case. (was, were) (Trollope)
37. It was as if the regiment .....half in khaki, half in scarlet and bearskins. (was, were) (Galsworthy)
38. *Youth and Age* .....a weekly, and it had published two-thirds of his twenty-one-thousand-word serial when it went out of business. (was, were) (London)
39. There ..... a number of men present. (was, were) (Walpole)
40. ...the flowers came in such profusion and such quick succession that there ..... neither time nor space to arrange them. (was, were) (Heym).

***Exercise 5. The US computer company Macroworth announced today that it is to move some of its operation to Camford in Britain. Here is an extract from the announcement. Make any necessary corrections to the parts of the verb to be.***

The new premises we plan to occupy in Camford are now being built. The outskirts of this city is an ideal site for a company like ours. R and D are an important part of our work, and next year fifty per cent of our budget are to be spent on our Camford centre. Some of our staff in the US are being asked to relocate, and eventually around ten per cent of our US workforce are to move to Britain. However, the majority of our new employees is to be recruited locally,

and we think that the local community are going to benefit enormously from this development. A number of business leaders and the local Member of Parliament is being invited to a meeting next week. Unfortunately, neither the Company President nor the Managing Director of Macroworth is available to address that meeting, but I and other senior managers am to attend.

## **THE ADJECTIVE**

### **THE CATEGORY OF DEGREES OF COMPARISON**

*Exercise 1. Give the comparative and superlative degrees of the following adjectives.*

Cosy, merciful, bad, complete, fat, narrow, merry, considerate, well-worn, shy, polite, well-known, light-minded, happy, short-sighted

*Exercise 2. Complete the sentences with a comparative or superlative form, adding any words that are needed. You may use some words twice.*

1. This exercise is too easy – can't we try a ..... (difficult)?
2. England's too cold in the spring – let's go to Spain where it's ..... (warm).
3. She comes top in all the exams – she must be ..... girl in the class (intelligent).
4. The temperature in July reaches forty-four degrees – it's ..... month of the year (hot).
5. Let's buy the video – it doesn't cost that much – it's ..... the other one (cheap).
6. This pen's not very good – I'd like a ..... one (good).
7. When I passed my driving test, it was the ..... day of my life (wonderful).
8. Lying down in bed is ..... sitting on a hard chair (comfortable).
9. The rules of this game are too complicated. Can we play something ..... (simple)?
10. She's ..... person I know she is always winning prizes in lotteries (lucky).
11. I have a ..... headache today than I did yesterday (bad).
12. This is ..... restaurant in town; I'm never coming here again (bad).

13. She was the ..... person at the party and I sat next to her all evening. It was awful (boring).
14. He was shorter than I was, and not more than an inch or two ..... than Irene, but his shoulders, neck and wrists were strong (tall). (Rosenberg).
15. I want Mrs. Lash flown to New Orleans by the ..... means (fast). (ibid).
16. Clive says there must be about ten blankets on the bed, and with each one you take off he gets ..... (cold). (ibid.)
17. He brought his project in the ..... way (quick).
18. The dispute grew ..... (simple, violent). (ibid.)
19. When I was a boy out here three years ago they were the ..... years (happy, jolly). (ibid.)
20. “Don’t you think it might be ..... if we turned out the light?” said Mr. Smiggs (wise). (ibid.)
21. It’s NASA Road, so it’s a little bit of a drive from here, but they’ve got to the ..... beef in town (good). (ibid.)
22. He winded his arms and approached the ..... of his pursuers still in the alley (young). (Truman).
23. In the National Gallery of Art’s hierarchy, Luther Mason stood ..... (tall) child.
24. After stepping down as director, Walker often cited losing that painting as one of his ..... professional disappointments (great). (ibid.)
25. His friend called the next day the ..... eye for art, surely not like yours, but this stuff is embarrassing (keen). (ibid.)
26. He was after all, the ..... art critic (influential).
27. “I’m sorry,” ..... of the two men said (tall). (Rosenberg)
28. “It’s not ..... case I’ve ever tried, and it’s not ..... (bad, good).” (ibid.)
29. As she was beginning to see her uncle in a ..... light, she was feeling ..... over the way she had handled the situation with Mario (sinister, guilty). (ibid.)
30. Mario had an alarm and having the police respond was clearly not in her ..... interest (good). (ibid.)

***Exercise 3. Choose the right forms in the following sentences.***

1. It’s the (less, lesser) of two evils.
2. Have you heard the (last, latest) news?

3. We have no (further, farther) information.
4. His (latest, last) words were: “The end”.
5. This is the town’s (oldest, eldest) house.
6. It’s the (furthest, farthest) point west.
7. Our youngest son doesn’t want to be a teacher unlike his (older, elder) brother.
8. A couple of miles is the (furthest, farthest) I can walk. Then we’ll have to catch the bus.
9. Did you decide to expose it at the (last, latest) minute to influence the jury? (Rosenberg)
10. Stella listened as the rest of the verdicts were read, most of the charges classified as (less, lesser) or included crimes. (ibid.)
11. The (older, elder) district attorney rubbed the side of his nose with a gnarly finger... (ibid.)
12. “Trust me, Stella. By this time (nearest, next) week, your problems should all be behind you.” (ibid.)
13. Once he agreed, they left, discussing Mario’s love life and his (last, latest) photography assignments on the drive to the Hobby airport. (ibid.)
14. Stella almost broke out laughing when she spotted the (latest, last) addition – a small diamond stud in his right earlobe. (ibid.)
15. “If you want to take away a man’s (last, latest) time, then you’ll have to come and get it.” (ibid.)
16. She circled around and took the chair (nearest, next) to him.
17. An (older, elder) ramshackle structure that she and her husband had never taken the time to repair,...
18. Seeing the small storage shack she had christened the carriage house, after the actual carriage houses that so many of the (elder, older) homes around the lake had once possessed, Stella had a brainstorm. (ibid.)
19. They took all the money in the cash drawer, even some of the store’s inventory, and the store owner was an (elder, older) man, Stella. (ibid.)
20. He handed Bishop the (last, latest) edition of the monthly bulletin Stolen Art Alert, compiled and distributed by the International Foundation for Art Research. (Truman)
21. I’d be the (latest, last) person to second-guess him. (ibid.)
22. Cardle Aprile had the (latest, last) word.



23. At five-thirty that afternoon, Annabel turned the (last, latest) page of the mug-shot book placed before her by Steve Jordan. (ibid.)
24. The New York detectives completed their report, and after some discussion and a promise of (farther, further) cooperation, left. (ibid.)
25. It would be the (last, latest) time he would ever see her. (ibid.)
26. Unless there are (further, farther) questions, we'll meet next at eight sharp Monday morning. (ibid.)
27. Lord knew, there were enough of those situations to be faced over the (nearest, next) seven days. (ibid.)
28. He no longer had time for it, no time for anything but paying attention to every (last, latest) detail of his plan. (ibid.)
29. My pension won't be large, but enough to live a comfortable life in a (less, lesser) expensive place. (ibid.)
30. He'd promised her a more senior job in the (near, nearer, nearest) future. (ibid.)
31. Pims was at the (far, farther, farthest) end of the bar when Lynn walked into Adiron dacks. (ibid.)
32. She was the (last, latest) to leave the hotel. (ibid.)
33. "Slow," Colarulli said, leading a (further, farther) advance. (ibid.)
34. "You'll love the show. I've managed to top even the (last, latest) week's production." (ibid.)
35. The skirt was hemmed several inches above the knee in the (last, latest) style, and Holly was wearing sheer black nylons and spike heels. (ibid.)
36. Carl Winters was standing in the (far, farther, farthest) corner of the booking room, leaning against the wall. (ibid.)
37. Lualle Maddox was in her (late, last, latest) forties with ash blond hair and fair skin. (Tayor)
38. "Will you be retaining counsel in the (near, nearer, nearest) future, Mrs. Cataloni?" (ibid.)
39. These people start early. Who was the (older, elder) of the brothers? (ibid.)
40. "How awful," he said, once she had relayed the (last, latest) developments. (ibid.)
41. Holly stormed into Frank Minor's office after her (last, latest) court appearance of the day. (ibid.)
42. It was bigger and (farther, further) to the right. (ibid.)
43. As soon as Stella concluded her business at the police department, they would return to Dallas on the (nearest, next) available shuttle. (ibid.)

## COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

**Exercise 1. Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate compound adjective formed from a word in the list.**

*distance up built made going up off  
conditioned class badly sighted headed*

**Example:** *I bought this CD duty-free as I was coming back from London.*

1. I made a long-..... call to England and it cost me a fortune.
2. They seem to be very well-..... at least they have a great big house and two expensive cars.
3. I'm fed-..... with this exercise – can't we do something else?
4. On the train I travel second-.....because it's cheaper.
5. You can see this vase is hand-.....and wasn't produced in a factory.
6. He's a really relaxed guy, so easy-.....
7. I live in a built-..... area of the city which is very noisy and full of traffic.
8. The office is air-....., so it's very cool, even in the summer.
9. He's so proud – I've rarely met anyone so big-..... . He has a really high opinion of himself.
10. I want to get my eyes tested – I've become really short-..... lately.
11. A-..... maintained car won't have a reliable engine.
12. There isn't much grass in the-..... up areas of the city.

**Exercise 2. Complete each unfinished sentence using compound adjectives formed with participles.**

**Example:** *They make all this pottery by hand. They're all hand-made.*

1. They pick these strawberries by hand.  
They're all.....
2. They build these cars by hand.  
They're all .....
3. He's a boy who looks nice.  
He's a ..... boy.
4. It's a record which plays for a long time.  
It's a ..... record.

5. It's a job which consumes a lot of time.  
It's a ..... job.
6. They're parents who suffer a lot.  
They're ..... parents.
7. They're rules which have stood for a long time.  
They're ..... rules.
8. It's a house which looks funny.  
It's a ..... house.
9. He's a salesman who talks fast.  
He's a ..... salesman.
11. The town in which I grew up made cars.  
I grew up in a ..... town.
12. We hired a design team based in Singapore.  
We hired a ..... design team.
13. Her performance at the Olympic Games broke a number of records.  
It was a ..... performance.
14. The public square was lined with trees.  
The public square was .....
15. Tom's builder who works for himself.  
Tom's is ..... builder.

### ORDER OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives go before nouns in English, but there are a few adjectives which go before or after nouns and they change in meaning according to their position:

*This elect body meets once a year (= specially chosen).*

*The president elect takes over in May (= who has been elected).*

***Which words or phrases in B best explain the words or phrases in A?***

- | A   | B                 |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. The concerned doctor phoned for an ambulance.    | a) correct        |
| 2. The doctor concerned in a holiday at the moment. | b) worried        |
| 3. It was a very involved question.                 | c) who was blamed |

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 4. The person involved has left the company.  | d) complicated                    |
| 5. Present employees number 3000.             | e) with a sense of duty           |
| 6. The employees present should vote on this. | f) now employed                   |
| 7. It was a proper question.                  | g) here now                       |
| 8. The question proper has not been answered. | h) connected with this<br>(twice) |
| 9. Janet is a responsible girl.               | j) itself                         |
| 10. The girl responsible has been expelled.   |                                   |

Some adjectives can be used immediately after a noun. These include: some **-ible** and **-able** adjectives such as **available, imaginable, possible, suitable**. However we use these adjectives immediately after a noun only when the noun follows words such as **first, lost, next, only** and superlative adjectives, or when a prepositional phrase follows the adjective:

*It's the only treatment suitable (or...the only suitable treatment).*

*It is an offer available to club members only.*

**Exercise 1. Write the word given in brackets in one of the spaces in each sentence, either before or after the noun, as appropriate.**

- Kevin always seemed such a ..... boy (responsible).
- Most of the ..... people ..... in the battle are now dead (involved).
- New regulators have come into force on the storage of dangerous chemicals. All the ..... companies ..... have been notified of these (concerned).
- There were over three hundred ..... people ..... at the meeting (present).
- This ..... process ..... takes three days. It's very complex (involved).
- The ..... situation ..... cannot be allowed to continue (present).
- Clara and Adam were the ..... children ..... for the damage (responsible).

Some adjectives (often those concerning health) can have a different meaning when used before a noun or on their own.

For example, we can say:

*He is ill.* (But: *He's a sick man* (though *he's an ill man* is also sometimes heard).

*The boy is well.* (But not *He's a well boy*).

*He's healthy. He's a healthy boy.*

*A. He was sick on an off for a hour (= he vomited);*

*B. He's a sick boy (= he's ill).*

**Exercise 2. Supply suitable adjectives (most of which relate to health).**

1. He's been in hospital for a month. He's ..... man.
2. Jane's in hospital and we're not allowed to visit her. She's still very .....
3. As soon as I stopped the car, my son jumped out and was very .....
4. John has been ill for a long time, but he's very ..... now.
5. Quick! Bring me some smelling salts. I feel quite .....
6. There was a ..... square mark on the wall where the picture hung.
7. I'm fed up with these clouds. I just want to be .....

When we use more than one adjective before a noun, there is often a preferred order for the adjectives. To help you to learn this order, it can be useful to remember that gradable adjectives (describing opinion, size, quality, shape and age) usually precede ungradable adjectives (participle adjectives and adjectives describing origin, material, type and purpose): opinion + size /physical quality/shape/age + colour + participle adjectives + material + type + purpose + noun.

**Exercise 3. You're looking for items you want to buy. Begin each sentence with "I'm looking for..."**

- 1) sports car – well-maintained – second-hand – with a low mileage
- 2) polished – beautiful – antique – dining-table – mahogany – English
- 3) canvas – American – a pair of trainers – grey and red – which I can use for jogging
- 4) cottage – dress – summer – pink and white – for my holiday

**Exercise 4. Put in the right word order or choose the right forms.**

**NOT A DOG'S DINNER**

(shoes: leather / Italian / expensive / handmade): these are my pride and joy. I own a (old beautiful pair) or I did until yesterday, when I discovered that one of the shoes was missing. I had left the shoes on my (doorstep back) to do some gardening. My neighbour has a (dog friendly large) called Sam.

When I saw that one of my shoes had disappeared, I knew that Sam had taken it. I can't say he behaved (bad/badly). He just behaved like a dog. Leather

looks (good/well) and tasted (good/well) too. I unwillingly gave Sam the (remaining Italian shoe) and then followed him. I not only found one (Italian unchewed shoe), but also a pile of things Sam had been borrowing, including my wife's (slippers fur-lined red), which Sam had tried to have for dinner!

**Exercise 5. Put the adjectives in brackets in these sentences in the most appropriate order.**

1. Mine's the ..... car (blue, Japanese, small).
2. I rent a(n) ..... house (furnished, large, old).
3. I've just bought a ..... table (beautiful, coffee, wooden).
4. Their ..... forces soon overcame the invasion (combined, military, powerful).
5. Have you seen this ..... invention (fantastic, German, new)
6. There was a ..... rug on the floor (soft, wonderful, woolen)
7. She gave me a ..... box (jewellery, metal, small, square)

**Exercise 6. Do the same for these. Write and between the adjectives if possible.**

When two gradable adjectives come before the noun, we can put either a comma or "and" between them.

*Compare: an attractive, big garden; an attractive and big garden.*

Two colour adjectives have "and" between them:

*Sweden's yellow and blue flag (not ...yellow, blue flag).*

Two ungradable adjectives have "and" between them if they are from the same class, but "and" is not used if they are from different classes.

*Compare: financial and political conditions; improving financial conditions.*

1. Cycling is a(n) ..... activity (outdoor, popular).
2. They live in ..... houses (mud, straw).
3. He was a ..... doctor (famous, medical).
4. There was an ..... meeting (important, urgent).
5. I've just finished a ..... novel (boring, depressing).
6. I met a ..... lady at the party (little, Spanish).
7. He is expected to be our ..... leader (outstanding, next, political).
8. This is a(n) ..... dress (Irish, first, lace, her).
9. In front the house had ..... windows (large, Venetian, two, glass).

10. Mason contented himself with reading magazines and reports he'd carried abroad in a ..... brief-case (brown-leather, expandable, well-worn). (Truman)
11. Sensi virtually ignored Mason throughout dinner, speaking to Giliberti in a ..... voice (raspy, low, tired). (Truman)
12. Your mother and I have you with what I consider to be a legacy upon which you can build a ..... life, should you desire (personal, rich, professional). (ibid.)
13. But rumor has it that this ..... man was actually drummed out of the spiritual corps for having taken money from his parishioners (little, old, gentle, sweet). (ibid.)
14. Luther was in a stote of almost total ..... collapse (physical, spiritual, psychological, emotional). (ibid.)
15. The voice was ..... (male, deep, resonant). (ibid.)
16. Then her eye went to a ..... Mercedes with opaque windows (four-door, black, large). (ibid.)
17. .... with ..... eyes and luscious lips, she dressed conservatively, giving her a ..... appearance even though it hid her considerable curves (efficient, reserved, tall/brown, enormous/professional, neat). (ibid.)
18. He was ..... (talkative, bright, inquisitive). (ibid.)

***Exercise 7. Some of the following phrases are in the wrong order. Tick those which are correct and change the others in the correct order.***

- 1) a young black man
- 2) a dark tall man
- 3) a wooden big spoon
- 4) a long wooden spoon
- 5) a birthday big delicious cake
- 6) a big fat Italian opera singer
- 7) a flying large old pan
- 8) a pair of black leather riding boots

***Exercise 8. Make corrections where necessary.***

Dear Alan,

I'm writing this letter from my new beautiful flat in Stratford. Although it's modern, it's in an entirely old building which has totally renovated last year, and the wooden original beams have been kept in the sitting room. It's quite

small, and is a best for one person flat, but it's completely comfortable for me. The sitting room leads on to a similar to yours garden which is full of wonderful yellow red flowers. Stratford is a small nice town and is very quiet in the winter. At the moment, though, in the middle of the tourist season, the traffic is extremely terrible. But despite this I think I'm going to be absolutely happy here, and I hope you'll get over to see me soon.

All the best,

Mark

## ADJECTIVE AND PARTICIPLE

*-ed* endings are used to describe people:

*The story interested John. – John was interested in the story.*

*-ing* endings are used to describe things, events, etc:

*The story was interesting.*

*-ing* endings are also used to describe people:

*Isn't John interesting!*

**Compare:** *Gloria was interested* (= that was the effect smn or smth had on her)

### **Exercise 1. Change these sentences using -ed / -ing endings.**

1. The journey tired us. The journey was .....
2. The experience upset Sylvia. Sylvia was .....
3. The experience upset us. The experience was .....
4. Gloria enchanted me. Gloria was .....
5. I enchanted Gloria. Gloria was .....
6. The children delighted us. We were .....

### **Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences with the correct -ed or -ing adjective.**

1. The instructions in the exam were very complicated and left the students feeling totally ..... (confuse).
2. I don't find horror films at all ..... in fact. I find them quite funny (frighten).
3. Would you be ..... in coming to the theatre this evening? I have a spare ticket (interest).
4. Can't you fix that dripping tap? It's getting on my nerves, it's really ..... (irritate).
5. I didn't expect to see Peter at the party. I was really ..... to see him there (surprise).



6. He's had a lot of bad news recently and is feeling a bit ..... Let's go and cheer him up (depress).
7. I find it ..... to lie on the sofa and listen to music after a hard day's work (relax).
8. I was told the film was really good but I felt utterly ..... by it (bore).
9. I get really ..... when people throw rubbish down in the streets. It makes me furious (annoy).
10. If I said anything as stupid as he did in front of a thousand people, I'd feel really ..... (embarrass).

### ADJECTIVE AND PREPOSITION

***Exercise 1. Choose adjectives from the ones given below and an appropriate preposition to complete the sentences. Give alternatives if they are possible:***

*afraid      angry      concerned      pleased      sorry*

1. You realise I'm not ..... you, don't you? It wasn't your fault.
2. I'm really ..... the mistake, but I had problems with the computer.
3. You're looking very ..... yourself! Have you won some money?
4. She was quite ..... the decision and wrote a letter of complaint.
5. I was ..... the success of your money ..... raising efforts.
6. I feel so ..... the parents of the children who were killed in the accident.
7. The government has become increasingly ..... the dangerous levels of exhaust pollution in city centres.
8. When the fighting broke out, Sarah was ..... her father who was in the capital city at the time.
9. Most of the newspaper seems to be ..... sport.

***Exercise 2. Change these sentences using good followed by an appropriate preposition. Make any other changes that might be needed.***

***Example: At school I always did well at maths. - I was always good at maths.***

1. Scientists now say that butter is healthy. Scientists now say .....
2. The election result benefits democracy. The election result .....
3. The children in the family I was staying with treated me well. The children in the family .....

4. I like cooking because I do it well. I like cooking .....
5. As she worked well with animals, she became a vet. As she .....
6. When he found the money that the old lady had lost, he felt pleased. When he found the money that the old lady had lost, he .....

***Exercise 3. Supply the missing prepositions***

1. We're are very sad ..... Jane's departure.
2. It's no good being angry ..... me.
3. John is jealous ..... his wife's success.
4. We should be kind ..... dumb animals.
5. I'm very fond ..... anything sweet.
6. We're really excited ..... the wedding.
7. I'm sorry \_\_\_ the trouble I've caused.
8. The south is different \_\_\_ the caused.
9. Don't trust him. He's capable \_\_\_ anything.
10. I was surprised \_\_\_ his attitude.
11. You can have this free \_\_\_ charge.
12. I'm curious \_\_\_ Tony's background.
13. Old Alf is very careful \_\_\_ his money.
14. We're quite safe \_\_\_ danger.
15. Bill is now married \_\_\_ the girl next door.
16. Businessmen can't be certain \_\_\_ success.
17. Contrary \_\_\_ expectations, she won!
18. I wasn't aware \_\_\_ Sam's absence.
19. This magazine is full \_\_\_ ads.
20. Frank's quite careless \_\_\_ danger.

**ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB**

***Exercise 1. Fill in each space with an appropriate adjective or adverb.***

1. If she tries ..... she may succeed in breaking the world record.
2. I was shocked I could ..... speak.
3. The teacher gave us a very ..... task but we managed it quite well.

4. The road isn't ..... enough for the lorry to get through.
5. The dentist asked her to open her mouth .....
6. The name of the suspect is ..... known in town – everyone knows who it is.
7. She did very ..... in the test.
8. Her result was so ..... that she got into Cambridge University.
9. Don't drive so ....., slow down!
10. He drove in the ..... lane on the motorway because he was in a hurry.
11. If you answer ....., cross it out and write it again.
12. She gave me the ..... address and I got lost.
13. They sat very ..... to each other to keep warm.
14. He had a very ..... voice which you could hear a mile away.
15. Feel ..... to ask me any questions you like.
16. It hasn't rained much .....; the last time was two months ago.
17. Farm workers have to work very ..... during the harvest.
18. Farm workers earn ..... enough money to pay their bills.
19. I got off first in the race but managed to come .....
20. .... and ..... I'd like to thank all these who made my success possible.
21. We've been receiving a lot of junk mail .....
22. The postman brings my mail so ..... I rarely see it before I go to work.
23. I'm sure the boss thinks very ..... of you.
24. If you want to succeed, you should aim .....
25. I don't think you were treated very .....
26. Just please don't go too ..... the edge of the platform!
27. I ..... fell off the edge of the platform.
28. "Look," Randall said, "things happened pretty ..... and furious that night. (Rosenberg)
29. "There was a lot of smoke and it was ..... to see," he said. (ibid.)
30. "Didn't you realize that by fleeing you were leaving yourself ..... open, that you might be sought as a suspect? (ibid.)
31. Stella was standing in the corridor ..... outside the door, only a few feet away from his wife and kids. (ibid.)
32. As soon as she saw Randall, she exploded, lashing out and slapping him ..... across the face. (ibid.)

33. He'd been losing his temper with greater frequency ..... (Truman.)
34. It was ..... enough navigating the tricky waters of foreign governments and international art dealers to pull together a show of this magnitude. (ibid.)
35. Carlo Gilberti was ..... for breakfast (ibid.)
36. His face felt ..... (ibid.)
37. Of all the places in Italy Mason had visited over the years, Ravello ranked ..... on his list of favourites. (ibid.)
38. He'd been arrested fourteen times in less than six years while living in Rome but never spent more than a night in jail, thanks to ..... placed friends including Cardinal del Monte, and the French Ambassador to Italy, who intervened on his behalf. (ibid.)
39. Now that we're here, I want it to happen ..... (ibid.)
40. ...., he's been associating with organized crime figures, one in particular, Luigi Sensi. (ibid.)
41. Stella had to assume that the woman had gotten in from a ..... flight and called, probably asking her brother to come over. (Rosenberg)
42. Even teenagers sometimes dropped ..... of heart attack. (ibid.)
43. His fees are ....., but he's one of the best defence attorneys in town. (ibid.)
44. Brenda Anderson felt ..... for Stella. (ibid.)
45. I hurt her so ..... but I can't stop. (ibid.)

**Exercise 2. Fill in each space with the correct adverb based on a word in the list. Use one word twice.**

<i>long</i>	<i>late</i>	<i>far</i>	<i>high</i>	<i>wide</i>	<i>most</i>
<i>slow</i>	<i>quick</i>	<i>further</i>	<i>wrong</i>	<i>little</i>	

#### **CATCH THAT THIEF**

There have been a number of burglaries in our neighbourhood..... (1). We are not sure who is to blame but it is ..... (2) believed that the burglaries are ..... (3) the work of one gang. The police have been very ..... (4) to act and they still know very ..... (5) for certain. The public, rightly or ..... (6), blame the police for not acting more ..... (7). Most people do not think very ..... (8) of the local police and indeed so..... (9) they have arrested only one suspect. They say they need more evidence before they can take the matter ..... (10). Whenever they are called in to investigate a

burglary, it takes them so ..... (11) to get to the scene of the crime that it is always too ..... (12) to catch the culprits.

*[Still waters run deep.]*

**Exercise 3. Complete the following sentences using adjectives or adverbs.**

We use adjectives after verbs relating to senses like *look, taste, appear*, etc. when they are used predicatively:

*It takes good* (=it is good)

**Note:**

*He seems well* (=appears to be in good health).

*He seems good* (=appears to be suitable)

1. I'd like to get to know him better. I don't know him very .....
2. I think my golf is getting better, but I have to say it's never been very .....
3. Jane's beginning to feel better. She hasn't been ..... for some time now.
4. I'm better-placed for promotion now, though I was quite ..... before.
5. The reference is better than the last one, which wasn't very ..... at all.
6. The situation is a great deal better now. It hasn't been very ..... for a long time now.
7. What do you mean my cooking tastes better?  
Surely it's always tasted very .....
8. What do you mean he seems better? He seemed very ..... when I last saw him.

Some adverbs have two forms which can be used in the same way:

*The light glowed bright / brightly.*

However, it is not usually made clear that the two forms are not always interchangeable. We have to use the *-ly* form when it is an adverb of manner with a dynamic verb saying how smth is/was done:

*He answered my question brightly.*

We often use the same form as an adjective when:

- we can replace the verb with *be* or *become* without really changing the meaning.

*The moon shone (was) bright.*

- after verb + object combinations when the adjective form could be regarded as describing the state of the object.

*We bought it. It was cheap. – We bought it cheap.*

However, many native speakers say:  
*We **bought it cheaply.***  
*The moon **shone brightly.***

***Exercise 4. Where possible, supply two forms in the following sentences.***

1. On a clear moonless evening, the stars shine very bright/brightly.
2. Teachers like students who answer questions bright/brightly.
3. We bought our last car dear/dearly and sold it cheap/cheaply.
4. We had our car replaced quite cheap/cheaply.
5. Please cut the next slice thin/thinly.
6. I wish you wouldn't play that awful music so loud/loudly.
7. For weeks, two detectives watched the house close/closely.
8. We came very close/closely.
9. It was cut clear/clearly in two.
10. Thank you for explaining the situation so clear/clearly.
11. "When a robbery goes bad/badly," Stella continued, "it turns into complete pandemonium." (Rosenberg)

Some adjectives end in *-ly*: *cowardly, friendly, lively, lovely, motherly, sickly, silly*:

*Meg's a friendly girl.*

***Exercise 5. Use the appropriate adjectives ending in -ly.***

1. That was a ..... thing to do.
2. She can't control her ..... feelings.
3. She's a ..... teacher.
4. He looks pale and .....
5. You don't have to be so .....
6. The men were assembled in folding chairs in a large room inside the Immaculate Conception church for the ..... meeting of the Houston chapter of the Knights Columbus, a fraternal organization seminar to the Masons or Shriners. (Rosenberg)
7. By the time Mason extricated himself from Giliberti at a ..... loud discotheque on the water's edge, where they were joined by a voluptuous young blond woman whose only interest seemed to be to hang on Giliberti. (Rosenberg)

8. I met a friend for a drink in Ravello, and he introduced me to an ..... gentleman who is retired from the Priesthood. (ibid.)

### ADJECTIVE, ADVERB AND INTENSIFIER

- **so and such**

We use *so* and *such* to say smth is similar to smth we have already mentioned. We use these words in the following patterns:

- so + adjective
- so + adjective + (that)
- so + adverb
- so + adverb + (that)
- so + many / much / little / few
- so + many / much / little / few + noun (phrase) + (that)
- such + noun (phrase)
- such + adjective + countable/uncountable noun
- such + adjective + plural noun
- such (a, an) + adjective + noun + (that)

- **too, very, enough**

We use *enough* and *too* in the following patterns:

- enough + noun + to-infinitive
- not + adjective + enough + to-infinitive
- not + adverb + enough
- too + adjective / adverb
- too + adjective + to-infinitive
- too + adjective + for + smth + to-infinitive
- too + adverb + for + smth + to-infinitive

***Exercise 1. Underline the correct phrase in the following sentences.***

1. We had to pay a high such price / such a high price for coffee in London.
2. Passing my driving test was such a / a so good feeling!
3. He had such / such a bad breath no woman would go near him.
4. We had a such / such an awful day that we wouldn't do it again.
5. She loved him such / so deeply she couldn't bear it when he was away.
6. There were so few / such a few people there, they nearly cancelled the performance.
7. The film was such a / so scary I nearly left the cinema.
8. I had so many / so much things to do I didn't know where to start.
9. It was a so / such a lovely day we took a picnic to the park.
10. There was so much / such noise I could hardly hear myself think.

**Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences with too, enough, very, so, such.**

1. It's much ..... hot in here – turn the heating down.
2. If you've had ..... food, I'll take the plates away.
3. She doesn't speak Spanish well ..... to order a meal for her.
4. The food was much ..... salty to eat.
5. That's a ..... beautiful piece of music. What is it?
6. I don't understand native speakers because they speak ..... quickly.
7. You're not writing quickly ..... the time is nearly over.
8. I don't have ..... room in the house to put up.
9. The film was ..... good. I wouldn't mind seeing it again.
10. We're ..... different characters. I don't know how we'll manage to get on.

**Exercise 3. Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using the word given.**

*Example:* We were caught by surprise by the cold weather.  
*such*  
We were very surprised by such cold weather.

1. I didn't have the strength to carry the case on my own.  
*heavy*  
The case was ..... to carry on my own.
2. The shelf was too high for me to reach.  
*tall*  
I ..... to reach the shelf.
3. I cried because the film was very sad.  
*so*  
The film was ..... cry.
4. We can't hear her because her voice is very soft.  
*softly*  
She ..... can't hear her.
5. John's marks were too low for the university.  
*high*  
John's marks ..... for the university.
6. If there had been fewer people in the queue we would have waited.  
*so*  
There ..... in the queue that we decided not to wait.
7. He got drunk because the wine in the restaurant was very strong.  
*strong*  
The wine ..... he got drunk.



8. If this soup was not so hot I could drink it now.

*too*

This soup is ..... drink now.

9. The ticket was too expensive for us.

*enough*

We didn't ..... a ticket.

[An acquaintance is someone you know well enough to borrow from but not well enough to lend to.]

- ***quite, rather, a bit / a little, fairly, very***

These have meanings which range from slightly marked to very strong marked:

*She's a bit / a little tall. She's fairly tall.*

*She is quite tall. She is rather tall. She is very tall.*

They can be followed by a number of structures:

a bit + adjective

a little + adjective

fairly + adjective + -ing

quite a + adjective + noun

quite + verb

rather + adjective/adverb

rather a (+adjective) + noun (phrase)

rather + verb

very + adjective/adverb

We can use *rather / a bit / a little* before comparative forms.

We use *quite as...as* or *not quite as / so as* to make comparisons.

We use *very* with adjectives ending in *-ful* but not in *-less*. We use *completely, utterly* etc.

*The interjection was very painful.*

*Did you think your dog was completely harmless?*

***Exercise 4. Correct the following sentences.***

1. It was fairly good day so we went for a walk.
2. He's rather a noisy in class.
3. She's always been a quite hard-working.
4. I fairly like the theatre but I prefer films.
5. John is quite more talkative than his brother.
6. Yes, I fairly agree with everything you say.

7. It came as quite shock to get home and find the house burgled.
8. I'm afraid I found the film but boring.

**Exercise 5. Underline the correct answer a, b, c, d to fill the spaces.**

1. She can be ..... bad-tempered first thing in the morning.  
a) quite      b) quiet      c) quite a      d) quite the
2. In fact she's ..... unpleasant much of the time.  
a) a rather      b) rather a      c) rather      d) rather to
3. That was ..... attempt but you still failed.  
a) fairly good      b) fairly      c) fairly a good      d) a fairly good
4. Forgive her, she can be ..... shy with strangers.  
a) a little bit      b) a little      c) little a      d) a bit little
5. The film was ..... and my grandson screamed at one point.  
a) quite frightened      b) quite a fright      c) quite frighten      d) quite frightening

**Exercise 6. Which intensifiers can you use in place of much in the following sentences? Sometimes there is more than one possibility.**

1. Queen Victoria was seldom much amused.
2. This is much the worst painting on display.
3. Our government is much concerned about the hostages.
4. I much prefer the picture on the right.
5. We aren't much interested in your proposal.
6. This essay isn't much better than the previous one.
7. John's much more cautious since his operation.

**Exercise 7. Maggie and Ray have just moved into new house. Maggie is talking to Ann about it. Look at these extracts from the conversation and correct any mistakes.**

A: Ray told me the people next door are very noisy.

M: Schh! Not as loud. They'll hear you. Actually, they're not so bad neighbours as we first thought.

2M: The previous owners wanted as many as £ 60 000 for it, but £ 50 000 was so high as we could do.

3A: How large garage have you got?

M: It's very small. In fact we can't get our car in but that's not too big problem. We park it outside.

4M: It's not such beautiful garden, but it's okay for us. The main problem is a huge tree as few as 3 metres from the house, which keeps out the light.

5A: Do you think Ray will be happy here?

M: Well, I'm not as sure, and he will be in the car for as many as 3 hours a day.

We can use *a lot* and *any* with comparatives:

*It's a lot bigger. It is any better.*

**Exercise 8. Add much, any, far, a lot and give alternatives where possible.**

1. I'm not ..... good at maths.
2. You're ..... quicker than me.
3. This is ..... more expensive.
4. This is ..... the best way to enjoy yourself.
5. I can't go ..... faster.
6. Those two recordings aren't ..... different.
7. You're ..... thinner than when I last saw you.

We can use *very much* before the following verbs: *agree, doubt, fear, hope, like, want, admire, appreciate, enjoy, regret.*

We can use *very* but *not (very) much* before participles.

*She was very disturbed to hear the news (not\*)*

*She was very much disturbed.*

We usually use *extremely, very, etc.* with gradable adjectives and *absolutely, completely, etc.* with ungradable adjectives. Here are more adverbs like these and adjectives which commonly follow them.

Gradable adjective	Ungradable adjective
Extremely...effective, difficult, hard	Absolutely... clear, necessary, sure true
Dreadfully...angry, disappointed, sorry	Simply... awful, enormous, terrible
Hugely... entertaining, enjoyable, successful	Utterly... unbearably, unrecognisable

When *quite* is used with ungradable adjectives it means "*completely*".

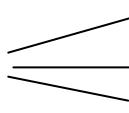
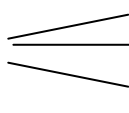
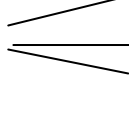
*Ted isn't coming until tomorrow. / "Are you quite certain?"*

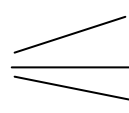
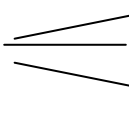
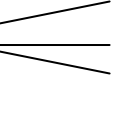
With gradable adjectives *quite* means "*not very*" (+*fairly*)

*I was quite satisfied with the result. (+fairly)*

**Exercise 9. Do you know which of these adverbs can come before each set of adjectives? The adverb you choose must be able to come before all three adjectives or participles in the set.**

badly   enormously   perfectly   severely   terribly   virtually

1.  boring  
important  
sorry
3.  acceptable  
adequate  
clear
5.  handicapped  
limited  
weakened

2.  identical  
impossible  
unchanged
4.  damaged  
needed  
wrong
6.  popular  
influenced  
powerful

**Exercise 10. Nick is unhappy at work and this is what he said when he came home. Replace all the examples of quite with either completely (or an adverb with a similar meaning) or fairly (or an adverb with a similar meaning).**

“It’s (1) quite unusual for me to get annoyed but I was (2) quite appalled at my boss’s attitude. He’d asked me to finish the report by next week. Well, even that would be (3) quite) difficult. But then this morning he told me he wanted it by tomorrow. He knew that it was (4) quite impossible for me to finish it by then. But he’s (5) quite determined to have it. It’s not fair. He knows I’m (6) quite good at writing reports, but he also knows I’m (7) quite useless at working under pressure like that. My old boss was (8) quite brilliant at organizing people.

*[There are three golden rules if you want to be a first-class public speaker: stand up, speak up, shut up.]*

**Exercise 11. Underline the correct word or phrase a, b, c, d to fill the spaces.**

- We hadn’t expected the trip to be ..... exhausting.  
a) such            b) so                    c) such a            d) like this
- ..... behaviour will get you into trouble with the director.  
a) such            b) such a                c) so                    d) like
- There were ..... people at the party there were no rooms to more.  
a) so much        b) that much            c) so many        d) such many
- The bell was much ..... expensive for me to pay on my own.  
a) very              b) too                    c) high                d) quite
- I don’t have ..... to speak now.  
a) enough of time    b) plenty time            c) enough time        d) a time

**Exercise 12. Complete the following sentences using the appropriate intensifier.**

1. I haven't seen him with a woman in \_\_\_ some time, but years ago I used to see him with a young blonde. (Rosenberg)
2. The office was decorated with heavy oak furniture and Western bronzes, and Stella noticed that none of it had apparently been dusted in \_\_\_ some time. (ibid.)
3. Too unpredictable. It will be chaotic there. \_\_\_ better to accomplish the deed in familiar surroundings. (ibid.)
4. This had been an \_\_\_ pleasant hour. (Truman)
5. It's been \_\_\_ quiet here since the children left home.
6. I feel \_\_\_ satisfied now that I think I can go back to work on Monday.
7. Few projects have required \_\_\_ colossal investment as the Channel tunnel.
8. I can't explain why I've been feeling \_\_\_ run down.

**Exercise 13. Look at the example:**

*The curry was hot – much hotter than I'd expected.*

**Complete these sentences as in the example.**

1. It was an interesting film \_\_\_ than the reviews said it was.
2. It was quite funny \_\_\_ than I'd expected.
3. The journey was easy \_\_\_ than you said it would be.
4. The traffic was very bad \_\_\_ than usual.
5. It was a really comfortable hotel \_\_\_ than I'd expected for the price.
6. She was quite young \_\_\_ than I was expecting.

## CONSTRUCTIONS WITH COMPARISON

**Exercise 1. Complete these sentences using the pattern the adjective (compar.)...the adjective (compar.)**

1. The later the general election, .....
2. The higher the temperature, .....
3. .... the more expensive it becomes.
4. The bigger a lemon gets .....
5. .... the more difficult it is to get up in the morning.
6. "But the more circumstantial a case is," she argued, .....

7. It's all just a simulation, of course, but the more realistic we make it, .....
8. The longer she stays out, .....
9. I thought she was on our side, and the closer I got to her, .....
10. The more time she spent with Luther Mason, .....

**Exercise 2. Complete the sentences below with the pairs of words in the box.**

faster, sooner	older, wiser
longer, less	sooner, better
more, more	sooner, sooner

1. Come on, let's go. The ..... we leave, the ..... we'll get there.
2. The ..... I think about what I said to Gill, the ..... I think I was wrong.
3. Come on. The ..... we work, the ..... we can go home.
4. The ..... I get, the ..... I become.
5. The ..... I finish school, the ..... I just want.
6. The ..... I work here, the ..... I like the way we're treated.

**Exercise 3. Complete these sentences with as...as or not as / such...as. Use the words in the brackets and add any other necessary words.**

1. It's ..... I've ever read in a newspaper (intelligent).
2. Since her accident, Maty has tried to lead ..... possible (normal) life.
3. It's ..... I'd imagined (not / beautiful) house.
4. They're..... in the last school I worked at (not / well-behaved) children.
5. Mr. Truworth is ..... his predecessor was (not / popular) President.
6. The new motorway is ..... it is in the countryside (not/ major/issue) town.

## SUBSTANTIVISED ADJECTIVES

**Exercise 1. Use the appropriate article with substantivised adjectives.**

### A HUMAN IDEAL

A just society is a human ideal. We would all like to live in a place where (rich) are not too rich and (poor) are not too poor; where no one would be shocked or embarrassed at the way (old) are cared for. (blind) would have as

much opportunity as (sighted). (deaf) would be able to develop their skills. (unemployed) would not depend on the state, because no one would be unemployed. (healthy) would take care of (sick). The most innocent people in society, (young) would be protected. In this happy place no one would feel depressed or distressed. Unfortunately, in the real world, life can be both distressing and depressing. So let's be thankful for a sense of humour. I recently saw a notice in an undertaker's window and I wasn't sure whether it was addressed to (living) or (dead). It said: "Once you've tried one of our funerals, you'll never want to try another!"

***Exercise 2. State the type of substantivised adjectives and fill in appropriate articles before substantivised adjectives where necessary.***

1. She was twenty-four. Her skin was pale with a touch of ..... green.
2. She had dressed carefully. The dress matching the tone of her skin seemed to emphasize ..... green of her eyes.
3. Fanny Price coloured. The blood under her unhealthy skin seemed to be ..... strange purple.
4. The sky was ..... light, radiant blue, but, although it was only early afternoon, a mist was creeping on to the brilliant grass.
5. His eyes were large and blue, but ..... blue was very pale, and they looked rather tired already.
6. I have nice hair. It is black, ..... red black, not dark brown.
7. The sun in the west was a drop of ..... burning gold that slid nearer and nearer the sill of the world.
8. I enjoyed the sensation of sitting quietly beside her and looking at ..... pale gold of her hair and ..... pale gold of her skin.
9. Ralph ignored Jack's question. He pointed to the touch of ..... yellow above the sea.
10. There was a scent of honey from the lime trees in flower, and in the sky ..... blue was beautiful, with a few white clouds which looked and perhaps tasted like lemon ice.
11. He himself had always liked ..... French, feeling at home with their wit, their taste, their cooking.
12. He's ..... Swiss, I believe.
13. I thought he was ..... Turk as he spoke ..... fluent Turkish.
14. You can't be a captain because you don't know ..... Italian well enough.

15. I only write about what a beautiful place we live in and how brave ..... Italians are.
16. .... Swiss are a very intelligent race and keenly alive to architectural beauty.
17. At dinner I ate very quickly and left for the villa where ..... British had their hospital.
18. I was obviously ..... German in Italian uniform.
19. You don't understand .....German, do you?
20. She wasn't ..... Swede, like her husband.
21. It would be better to be in the study hall than out in ..... cold.
22. You're too brave. Nothing ever happens to ..... brave. The coward tries a thousand deaths, ..... brave but one.
23. It was always your ambition to be a nurse and help ..... sick ever since you were a little child, wasn't it?
24. Philip learned how little there was in common between ..... poor and classes above them.
25. Old Jolyon sighed; he had an insatiable appetite for ..... young.
26. We'll be getting to Twelve Oaks in a little bit, and every man there, ..... old and ..... young, wanting to know about the horses.
27. His hair was ..... yellowish gray, his eyes small, watery orbs in his heavily lined face, and his bushy mustache drifted too far below his lip. (Rosenberg)
28. When you've lived the life we have, it's better to expect ..... worst. (Rosenberg)
29. She sang in the choir at their church and every Saturday she could be found on the ghetto dispersing food to ..... homeless. (Rosenberg)
30. My husband could not right ..... wrongs with his brother so he transferred with guilt to someone else. (ibid.)

***Exercise 3. Use the correct substantivised adjectives in the following sentences.***

1. Stella closed her eyes and let her mind drift far into (past).(Rosenberg)
2. "Wait," Brenda said, having saved (good) for (late). (ibid.)
3. (Relative) of (dead) had been awarded huge sums from the company. (ibid.)
4. Let's say some of those men were legitimately injured, but they just couldn't get their (superior) to classify them as disabled. (ibid.)



5. If you stop the game, the crowd will assume (bad) and panic. (ibid.)
6. Of all the places in Italy Mason had visited over the years Ravello ranked high of his list of (favourite). (Truman)
7. The Italian cultural attaché and the seniour were a study in (opposite): Mason looked every bit the professor, or gallery curator. (Rosenberg)
8. His tie was a palette of (red, green) and (yellow), his shoes highly polished black loafers with paper-thin soles. (ibid.)
9. As far as he was concerned, no one in the world – including any (Italian) – knew more about the artist than he did. (ibid.)
10. You and your (superior) have found the arrangements suggested to Carlo to be satisfactory. (ibid.)
11. They lunched at an outside table at Piccolo Mondo, on the Corso, the famous thoroughfare once used by ancient (Roman) for horse racing, now home to countless restaurants and cafes. (ibid.)
12. From what Annabel observed, everything had been worked out long ago; the visit was pro forma, the conversation with church (old) nothing more than a pleasant exchange about Caravaggio's importance. (ibid.)
13. In art circles, (imaginable) is too often normal. (ibid.)
14. That was (late) I heard from him. (ibid.)
15. He'd been reticent in (past) about making public appearances. (Truman)
16. But as you know, (French) hate naming anything after a dead statesman. (ibid.)
17. It wasn't long before his artfulness led him into (inevitable). (ibid.)
18. But recently he'd become consumed with that need, perhaps to compensate for large (wrong) he was in the process of perpetrating. (ibid.)
19. Cocktails were served in the Blue Room, one of the Mason's (favourite), oval-shaped and approximately the same size as the Oval Office. (ibid.)
20. With his credentials and credibility, the fact that the priest might have stolen something in (past), and was defrocked, doesn't mean too much. (ibid.)
21. I wish you and your excellent staff every success in (future). (ibid.)
22. If I were you, I'd take this very seriously and hope that it passes – but brace for (bad). (ibid.)
23. He searched for the phone in (dark) and put the receiver to his ear. (ibid.)
24. Just taking (bitter) with (sweet), as my father used to say. (ibid.)
25. (blond) saw Mac, stopped and pointed his revolver at him. (ibid.)
26. I should be there by six at (late). (Truman).

***Exercise 4. Translate into English.***

1. Прекрасное всегда радует глаз.
2. Небо было ярко-голубое.
3. Черный был определенно не его цвет.
4. Не стойте на холоде. Вы хотите заболеть?
5. Это были люди, которые посвятили себя изучению неизвестного.
6. У нее были темно-золотистые волосы, темно-коричневые глаза, а кожа бледно-золотистая.
7. Старые не всегда и даже большую часть времени не чувствуют себя старыми.
8. Элиза была прекрасна в черном и белом.
9. Мне нравится ваша седина на висках.
10. Они просили его о невозможном.
11. У нее были темно-голубые сердитые глаза.
12. Я полагаю, вы правы, все идет к лучшему.
13. Он принял неизбежное.
14. Большинство раненых были спокойны, но некоторые очень шумели.
15. Когда мы вместе работали, я делал вам много хорошего.
16. Он, бывало, вознаграждал добрых и наказывал жестоких.
17. У нее были необыкновенные способности смешивать главное со второстепенным.
18. Ее мысли были заняты будущим.
19. Джейн была высокая, смуглая и красивая. Она была одета в белое, а в ее черных волосах сияли бриллианты.
20. Они русские. Русские – прекрасный народ.
21. Говорят, он не швед, а болгарин.
22. Он хорошо говорил по-немецки, и гораздо хуже по-английски.
23. Я думал, что вы сказали, что он француз, так как он хорошо говорит по-французски.
24. “Не может быть, что вы англичанин, так как вы недостаточно хорошо знаете английский. Вы даже и не итальянец.” “Я чех, но я был в Италии”, сказал я, “и говорил по-итальянски.”

***Exercise 5. Translate into English using various sentence patterns to express comparison.***

1. Чем меньше ты будешь говорить, тем лучше.
2. К сожалению, я не смог прийти так рано, как обещал.
3. Кошка упала с крыши, но чувствует себя нисколько не хуже от этого.
4. Комната хорошая, но все же не такая хорошая, как бы мне хотелось.
5. Чем больше человек имеет, тем больше ему хочется.
6. Я не так молод, как вы.
7. Погода меняется к лучшему.
8. Окно узкое, как дверь.
9. Суп хорошо пахнет, а на вкус еще лучше.
10. Как пройти к ближайшей почте,
11. Если он поможет нам, тем лучше.
12. Если он не делает уроков, тем хуже для него.
13. Чем скорее ты сделаешь это, тем лучше.
14. Он становился все слабее и слабее.
15. На этот раз у вас меньше ошибок.
16. Эта комната в два раза меньше, чем та.

***Exercise 6. Translate the following into English using substantivised adjectives where possible.***

1. Слепых учат ремеслам, чтобы подготовить их для работы.
2. Требуется няни для ухода за ранеными.
3. После отъезда сына они перестали приглашать молодежь.
4. У входа в церковь стоял слепой.
5. Доктор хочет осмотреть раненого.
6. Молодежи нравится все делать по-своему.
7. Англичане любят чай.
8. В гостинице было много англичан.
9. Больной попросил воды.
10. Он считал, что его долгом было помочь бедняку.
11. Работа по спасению пострадавших продолжалась до глубокой ночи.
12. Ты говоришь как неграмотный человек.
13. Он всегда навещал больных два раза в день.

14. Он надеялся застать юношу еще дома.
15. Для безграмотных были организованы вечерние занятия.
16. Шестерых из пострадавших было разрешено взять домой.

## STATIVES

***Exercise 1. Complete these sentences using statives, comment on their morphological and syntactic properties.***

1. The frightened people ran out of the building. They all looked terribly .....
2. We looked at the floating vessel. We were glad to know it was still .....
3. I could never touch a live lobster. I could never touch a lobster that is still .....
4. The burning forest glowed in the darkness. The forest was .....
5. I never feel lonely when I am .....

## **ANSWER KEY**

### **THE NOUN. CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS**

#### **Ex. 3.**

1. are. 2. wasn't. 3. contains. 4. are/ were. 5. was; was. 6. were. 7. were. 8. is.  
9. have. 10. creates. 11. is. 12. are. 13. are. 14. were. 15. was/ were.  
16. is/are. 17. has. 18. are. 19. were. 20. is. 21. are; seem. 22. has/have. 23. is/  
are. 24. means. 25. is.

#### **Ex. 4. Correct answers**

31. the contents. 2. grapes. 3. trouble. 4. are. 5. is. 6. the gate. 7. fruit; it.  
8. clothes. 9. election; is. 10. funeral; was. 11. was; was. 12. advice. 13. was.  
14. were. 15. was. 16. a Swiss watch; Swiss watches. 17. detail. 18. detail.  
19. fruits. 20. potatoes and onions. 21. gate. 22. gates; were. 23. gate; is.  
24. gates; were. 25. details. 26. details. 27. fruits. 28. detail. 29. thought.  
30. second thoughts.

#### **Ex. 6.**

1. has/have. 2. was/were. 3. have. 4. has / have. 5. were. 6. was/were. 7. were.  
8. has/have. 9. has. 10. were. 11. is. 12. is. 13. has. 14. are. 15. are. 16. was.  
17. was. 18. were. 19. was. 20. is.

#### **Ex. 7. Correct sentences**

22. The island's politics are complex, with over twelve parties competing for power.  
23. Gymnasts from over 40 countries are competing in Madrid this weekend.  
24. Economics has become an increasingly popular course at university.  
25. The latest news of the earthquake survivors is very disturbing.  
26. Jim's politics have changed considerably since he was in his twenties.  
27. Diabetes is an illness caused by too much sugar in the blood.  
28. Recent government statistics show a sharp decline in crime.  
29. Women's gymnastics is no longer dominated by eastern Europeans.  
30. Statistics is now compulsory for all students taking a course in engineering.  
31. For good health we should eat a few vegetables every day, as well as a little fruit.  
32. Most years, over three hundred athletes compete in the games.  
33. The economics of the plan are worrying investors.  
34. Measles is still a fairly serious childhood disease in some countries.  
35. 'These are tactics. We lawyers are famous for our tactics. They are the slices and spins we put on the ball, the angles and speed we use to bring about a certain necessary effect.' (Patricia D. Cornwell)  
36. The logistics of the system don't really matter much because I can't let you see the master tape without a properly executed subpoena. (S. Grafton)

37. The money is a touchy issue. (S. Grafton)  
 38. The Asthma Helpline will be able to give you (some) advice.  
 39. Rickets is a disease caused by a deficiency of vitamin D.  
 40. You can't hold a classical concert in the village hall; the acoustics are terrible.  
 41. Dominoes is played by a lot of older men in cafés.  
 42. Politics mean nothing to me, but Michael is a good man and I trust him. (Jack Higgins)

**Ex. 8.**

1. authorities. 2. heavens. 3. odds. 4. sights. 5. terms. 6. expenses. 7. talks.  
 8. sands. 9. hopes. 10. powers. 11. travels. 12. movements. 13. matters.  
 14. basics. 15. waters. 16. interests. 17. airs and graces. 18. weathers.

**THE CATEGORY OF NUMBER OF NOUNS**

**Ex. 1.**

a) lens – pl. lenses; dish – pl. dishes; safe – pl. safes; rodeo – pl. rodeos; speech – pl. speeches; watch – pl. watches, patriarch – pl. patriarchs; pro – pl. pros, berry – pl. berries; face – pl. faces; portfolio – pl. portfolios; journey – pl. journeys; tomato – pl. tomatoes; cry – pl. cries; key – pl. keys; fox – pl. foxes; rock – pl. rocks; bush – pl. bushes; enemy – pl. enemies; hero – pl. heroes; bunch – pl. bunches; volcano – pl. volcanoes/ volcanos; pie – pl. pies; possibility – pl. possibilities; echo – pl. echoes; video – pl. videos; joy – pl. joys; extremity – pl. extremities; spy – pl. spies; lie – pl. lies; tiptoe – pl. tiptoes; stitch – pl. stitches; Hindoo – pl. Hindoos; essay – pl. essays; adagio – pl. adagios; boss – pl. bosses; waltz – pl. waltzes; quiz – pl. quizzes; fez – pl. fezzes; monarch – pl. monarchs; mosquito – pl. mosquitoes, quay – pl. quays.

b) sheaf – pl. sheaves; knife – pl. knives; louse – pl. lice; swine – pl. swine; ox – pl. oxen; roof – pl. roofs; leaf – pl. leaves; sheep – pl. sheep; ship – pl. ships; youth – pl. youths; loss – pl. losses; goose – pl. geese; moose – pl. moose; deer – pl. deer; wolf – pl. wolves; mouse – pl. mice; foot – pl. feet; handkerchief – pl. handkerchiefs/ handkerchieves; thief – pl. thieves; birth – pl. births; bath – pl. baths; fish – pl. fish/ fishes; wharf – pl. wharfs/ wharves; hearth – pl. hearths; house – pl. houses; Burmese – pl. Burmese; Roman – pl. Romans; proof – pl. proofs; life – pl. lives; cheese – pl. cheeses; Milanese – pl. Milanese.

c) axilla – pl. axillae/ axillas; cortex – pl. cortices; phalanx – pl. phalanges; sinus – pl. sinuses; hernia – pl. hernias/ herniae; sanctum – pl. sanctums/ sancta; vortex – pl. vortices/ vortexes; condominium – pl. condominiums/ condominiumia; axis – pl. axes; continuum – pl. continuums/ continua; phenomenon – pl. phenomena (a fact or an event in nature or society)/ phenomenons (a person or thing that is very successful or impressive); adieu – pl. adieus/ adieux; fungus – pl. fungi/ funguses; census – pl. censuses; crisis – crises; datum – pl. data;

apparatus – pl. apparatus/ apparatuses; antenna – pl. antennae (biological term)/ antennas (radio aerials); stimulus – pl. stimuli; medium – pl. mediums/ media; analysis – pl. analyses; delirium – pl. deliriums/ deliria; basis – pl. bases; genius – pl. geniuses/ genii; formula – pl. formulas/ formulae (esp. in scientific use); criterion – pl. criteria; appendix – pl. appendices; plateau – pl. plateaus/ plateaux; album – pl. albums; agenda – pl. agendas; diagnosis – pl. diagnoses.

d) read-out – pl. read-outs; brother-in-law – pl. brothers-in-law; clergyman – pl. clergymen; downfall – pl. downfalls; looker-on – pl. lookers-on; Englishwoman – pl. Englishwomen; man-of-war – pl. men-of-war; penknife – pl. penknives; forget-me-not – pl. forget-me-nots; mischief-maker – pl. mischief-makers; hang-up – pl. hang-ups; finger-tip – pl. finger-tips; court-martial – pl. courts-martial; stepdaughter – pl. stepdaughters; mouthful – pl. mouthfuls/ mouthsful; sit-up – pl. sit-ups; telltale – pl. telltales; lean-to – pl. lean-tos; intake – pl. intakes; rule of thumb – pl. rules of thumb; glasshouse – pl. glasshouses; bird of prey – pl. birds of prey; commander-in-chief – pl. commanders-in-chief; woman priest – pl. women priests; woman-hater – pl. woman-haters; house-husband – pl. house-husbands; get-together – pl. get-togethers; give-away – pl. give-aways; credit card user – pl. credit card users; German – pl. Germans; merry-go-round – pl. merry-go-rounds; lady friend – pl. lady friends; man student – pl. men students; manhole – pl. manholes.

### Ex. 3.

1. grapefruit. 2. antennae. 3. algae. 4. criteria. 5. geraniums. 6. dominoes. 7. adieux. 8. adieu. 9. mouthfuls/ mouthsful. 10. geniuses. 11. fruit. 12. shepherds, ballerinas, courtiers, elves, fairies. 13. automatons. 14. memoranda. 15. advice. 16. cactuses/ cacti. 17. an oasis. 18. nasturtiums. 19. a quick two steps. 20. In-laws. 21. r's. 22. i's; t's. 23. An early analysis. 24. crocuses. 25. a Manx. 26. contents; handfuls / handful. 27. content. 28. strata. 29. a solarium. 30. As; Ds. 31. a-b-c's. 32. media. 33. die. 34. dice. 35. wrongs; offspring.

### Ex. 4.

1. grouse. 2. sheep. 3. partridge. 4. mice. 5. a moor sheep. 6. a sheep. 7. do. 8. have. 9. were. 10. were. 11. salmon; a huge fish. 12. the grouse. 13. don't. 14. need. 15. a sheep. 16. sheep. 17. are. 18. fish. 19. fish. 20. were. 21. llamas. 22. the hounds. 23. shark; the sharks. 24. the swine. 25. antelopes. 26. antelope; fish. 27. pheasants; partridges. 28. reindeer. 29. moose. 30. buffalo.

### Ex. 5.

1. the series. 2. a series. 3. this series. 4. a different species. 5. a queer species. 6. is. 7. the crossroads. 8. a career crossroads. 9. the means. 10. a means. 11. my means. 12. have. 13. were. 14. the gallows. 15. a gallows. 16. was/ were.

17. was. 18. the army barracks. 19. are. 20. is. 21. were. 22. are. 23. an independent counsel. 24. aircraft. 25. is.

### **THE CATEGORY OF CASE OF NOUNS**

#### **Ex. 4.**

1. Subjective. 2. Subjective. 3. Objective. 4. Subjective. 5. Objective. 6. Subjective. 7. Subjective. 8. Objective. 9. Subjective. 10. Objective. 11. Subjective. 12. Subjective. 13. Objective. 14. Subjective.

#### **Ex. 5.**

1. Classifying. 2. Specifying. 3. Classifying; specifying; classifying. 4. Classifying. 5. Specifying. 6. Classifying. 7. Specifying. 8. Specifying. 9. Classifying. 10. Classifying. 11. Specifying. 12. Classifying. 13. Classifying. 14. Specifying. 15. Classifying. 16. Specifying. 17. Classifying. 18. Specifying. 19. Classifying.

#### **Ex. 11.**

1. Isabella's unexpected visit. 2. a four months' indisposition. 3. the family's general attitude. 4. a faithful servant's wages. 5. a private boys' school. 6. her uncle-in-law's evil disposition. 7. Linton's near neighbourhood. 8. Mr. Linton's philosophical resignation. 9. a private girls' academy. 10. a rich person's clinic. 11. his wild beast's fondness; his madman's rage. 12. a four miles' walk. 13. a morning's work = one morning's work. 14. two hours' train sleep. 15. the Consul's home address. 16. another twelve months' end. 17. the ladies' room. 18. some minutes' reflection. 19. Linton's next absence. 20. a minute's silence. 21. a weasel's nest. 22. a year's leave. 23. a man's world. 24. a winter's day. 25. your brother's request. 26. a records' search. 27. A thousand smiths' hammers. 28. an hour's interview. 29. a woman's man. 30. a P.I.'s job; (P.I. = private investigator). 31. the world's problems.

### **THE CATEGORY OF GENDER OF NOUNS**

#### **Ex. 1.**

God – goddess; hero – heroine; groom – bride; sorcerer – sorceress; widow – widower; bachelor – spinster; policeman – policewoman; duke – duchess; peahen – pea-cock; sultan – sultana; prophet – prophetess; bull whale – cow whale; lad – lass; host – hostess; lion – lioness; tiger – tigress; he-wolf – she-wolf; manservant – maidservant; tom-cat – tabby-cat; boy-friend – girl-friend; emperor – empress; female elephant – male elephant; jack-ass – jenny-ass; billy-goat – nanny-goat; heir – heiress; fiancé – fiancée; earl, count – countess; tsar – tsarina/ czarina; gentleman – gentlewoman; monk – nun; goose – gander; pig – sow – fully grown female pig, boar – a male pig; ram – ewe; stallion – mare/ filly – a young female horse; masseur – masseuse; usher – usherette; master – mistress; female nurse – male nurse; priest – priestess; wrestler – woman



wrestler; duck – drake; fox – vixen; deer – stag – a fully grown male deer, doe – a female rabbit or deer; buck – a male rabbit or deer; signor – signora; manager – manageress (BrE, becoming old-fashioned).

**Ex. 2.**

1. The interesting and inspiring thing about **America** is that *she* asks nothing for *herself* except what *she* has a right to ask for humanity itself. (Woodrow Wilson).
2. ‘But **the fox** might come again,’ Benny said slowly. ‘Last time *he* killed twelve chickens.’ (Jack Higgins)
3. If **England** treats *her* criminals the way *she* has treated me, *she* doesn’t deserve to have any (O. Wilde)
4. When did **the USA** first send *its* ambassador to Russia?
5. One three-month-old **baby** managed to talk *its* parents into sending Santa a letter.
6. **The boat** was very flat, the central section including the wheelhouse rising up from the deck three quarters of the way along. *She* was about five hundred feet in length. (Jack Higgins)
7. One’s days are too brief to take the burden of another’s sorrows on one’s shoulders. Each man lives his own life, and pays his own price for living it. The only pity is that one has to pay so often for a single fault. One has to pay over and over again, indeed. In her dealings with man **Destiny** never closes *her* accounts. (O. Wilde)
8. Intellectually I know that **America** is no better than any other country; emotionally I know *she* is better than every country. (Sinclair Lewis)
9. ‘Do you have children?’ Melanie Joan said.  
‘No,’ I said. ‘I have **a dog**.’  
‘Will that be a problem?’  
‘I’ll miss *her*,’ I said. ‘But *she* can stay with *her* father.’ (Robert B. Parker)
10. And when **Death** at last lays *his* icy hand upon you, you will share my Kingdom.
11. **The baby** was lying on *his* back in *his* crib, perfectly content.
12. I heard Ryan say to Mr. Bell **the Irish Rose (= the boat)** is well on *her* way by now, so we’ll see *her* Friday morning. (Jack Higgins)
13. **Our country**. In *her* intercourse with foreign nations may *she* always be in the right; but our country right or wrong! (Stephen Decatur)
14. You know that **cat**, *it* scratched me.
15. One night there flew over the city a little **Swallow**. *His* friends went away to Egypt six weeks before. But *he* stayed behind, because *he* was in love with the most beautiful Reed. (O. Wilde)
16. Only **the dog**’s determination to be reunited with *her* master kept *her* going.
17. **The Earth** is going to get married, and this is *her* bridal dress. (O. Wilde)

18. It was winter, and a night of bitter cold. The snow lay thick upon the ground. And upon the branches of the trees the frost kept snapping the little twigs on either side of them, as they passed. And when they came to **the mountain torrent**, *she* was hanging motionless in the air, for the Ice-King had kissed *her*. (O. Wilde)
19. ‘Ugh!’ growled **the Wolf**, as *he* ran through the wood with *his* tail between *his* legs, ‘this is perfectly terrible weather. Why doesn’t the Government look to it?’ (O. Wilde)
20. They were terribly frightened, because they knew that **the Snow** is cruel to those who sleep in *her* arms. (O. Wilde)
21. So **the Star-Child** was brought up with the children of the Woodcutter. *He* sat at the same board with them, and was their playmate. (O. Wilde)
22. Then came the turn of **the Sun**. At first *he* beamed gently upon the traveller, who soon unclasped his cloak and walked on with it hanging loosely about his shoulders: then *he* shone forth in *his* full strength, and the man, before he had gone many steps, was glad to throw his coat right off and complete his journey more lightly clad. (Aesop’s Fables)
23. **The North Wind** had the first try; and, gathering up all *his* force for the attack, *he* came whirling furiously down upon the man, and caught up his cloak as though *he* would wrest it from him by one single effort: but the harder *he* blew, the more closely the man wrapped it round himself. (Aesop’s Fables)
24. **Love** is wiser than **Philosophy**, though *he* is wise, and mightier than **Power**, though *he* is mighty. *His* wings are flame-coloured, and *his* body is coloured like a flame. *His* lips are sweet as honey, and *his* breath is like frankincense. (O. Wilde)
25. Then the Nightingale gave one last burst of music. **The white Moon** heard it, and *she* forgot the dawn, and still remained in the sky. (O. Wilde)

## THE PRONOUN

### Ex. 2.

1. him; me. 2. I/ me. 3. you; me. 4. he/ him (infml). 5. she/ her (infml). 6. they/ them (infml). 7. we. 8. I/ me (infml); him. 9. her. 10. me; me. 11. him. 12. I/ me (infml). 13. me (fml)/ I (infml). 14. him; her; you; her. 15. she. 16. me. 17. he. 18. I. 19. I. 20. me; you. 21. I/ me. 22. me. 23. me / I. 24. me. 25. me. 26. I. 27. I/ me. 28. us. 29. they/ them. 30. I. 31. me. 32. me. 33. him.

### Ex. 3.

1. my; hers. 2. her; their. 3. yours. 4. hers. 5. their; mine; hers. 6. mine. 7. mine. 8. your; mine. 9. your; ours. 10. theirs. 11. her. 12. your; mine. 13. her; mine; her. 14. his; hers. 15. its. 16. my; theirs.

**Ex. 4.**

1. the cheek. 2. his wife; his arms. 3. my brains. 4. the shoulder. 5. my tongue. 6. his very finger-ends. 7. the cheek. 8. his hands. 9. the hand. 10. her hands; her knees. 11. the sleeve. 12. her fingers; her ears. 13. the neck. 14. her foot; the cheek. 15. the leg. 16. his hat; his head. 17. her lips. 18. her hair; her shoulders; her eyes; her neck and arms. 19. the head. 20. your sleep. 21. the hand.

**Ex. 6.**

1. yourself. 2. – . 3. himself. 4. myself. 5. themselves. 6. – . 7. yourself. 8. itself/ ourselves. 9. – . 10. – . 11. herself. 12. myself. 13. himself. 14. herself. 15. himself. 16. herself. 17. herself. 18. myself. 19. yourself. 20. himself. 21. yourself. 22. himself.

**Ex. 7. Correct sentences**

1. I had a swim, quickly dried myself, and put on my clothes.
2. Now that he was famous, he heard a lot about himself on TV and radio.
3. Why don't you bring the children with you?
4. You ought to be ashamed of yourself/ yourselves.
5. They pulled the sledge behind them through the snow.
6. She put out her hand and introduced herself as Antonia Darwin.
7. 'Have you ever been to California?' 'No... oh, yes, once,' he corrected himself.
8. I could feel the ground start to move under me.
9. They applied themselves to the task with tremendous enthusiasm.
10. It was another rainy Sunday afternoon and we didn't know what to do with ourselves.
11. She should look after herself better. She's lost a lot of weight.
12. I am by myself. (E. Bronte)
13. He kept his growing sentiment religiously to himself. (John Galsworthy)
14. 'That is quite possible,' remarked Heathcliff, forcing himself to seem calm: 'quite possible that your master should have nothing but common humanity and a sense of duty to fall back upon.' (E. Bronte)
15. It's nice to have her all to ourselves, isn't it? (John Galsworthy)
16. I am sure I should be myself were I one among the heather on those hills. (E. Bronte)
17. He'll never let his friends be at ease, and he'll never be at ease himself. (E. Bronte)
18. I yielded, in the faint hope that Linton himself might prove, by his reception of us, how little of the tale was founded on fact. (E. Bronte)
19. He (Soames) had never been a peacock like that fellow Dartie, or fancied himself a woman's man, but he had a certain belief in his own appearance. (John Galsworthy)
20. It was not to amuse myself that I went: I was often wretched all the time. (E. Bronte)

21. Evan is thinking of bringing some work with him.
22. Ouch! The radiator is really hot! I've burnt myself!
23. The paint effect you've used on the wall is great! Did you do it by yourself?
24. The girl's coach rebuked her for missing some very easy shots.
25. Most people find this style of art depressing. As for myself/ me, I think it's stimulating!

**Ex. 9.**

1. each other. 2. one another. 3. one another. 4. each other. 5. one another.
6. each other. 7. each other. 8. one another. 9. each other. 10. one another.
11. each other. 12. one another. 13. each other. 14. each other. 15. each other.
16. each other. 17. each other; each other's. 18. each other. 19. each other.
20. one another. 21. one another. 22. each other.

**Ex. 10.**

1. Countries *are competing with each other* to build the tallest building in the world.
2. We had an argument a few days ago and since then we've tried to *avoid each other*.
3. I think strawberries and ice cream *complement each other* really well.
4. The companies *are collaborating with each other* to produce an electric car. It's good to see them working together at last.
5. The two families don't know *each other*.
6. It was the first time the two players *had faced each other* across the chess board.
7. If you've got a computer, too, we should be able to *communicate with each other* by email.
8. The pupils don't work on their own; in fact, they're encouraged to *help each other*.
9. We *kissed each other* and were friends again.
10. The twins *looked at each other* glumly.

**Ex. 13.**

a)

1. that. 2. who. 3. who. 4. what. 5. that. 6. which. 7. which. 8. what; what.
9. which. 10. that. 11. what. 12. which. 13. which. 14. what. 15. that. 16. what.
17. which. 18. which. 19. which. 20. what. 21. that. 22. what.

b)

1. which. 2. which. 3. who; that. 4. that. 5. that. 6. who. 7. that. 8. what. 9. that.
10. which. 11. which. 12. that. 13. which. 14. which. 15. who. 16. that. 17. that.
18. that. 19. which. 20. whatever.

**Ex. 16.**

1. every. 2. each/every. 3. each. 4. every. 5. each. 6. every. 7. each/every.
8. every. 9. every. 10. each (*every* is possible but less likely). 11. every.
12. every. 13. every. 14. each. 15. each. 16. each. 17. every. 18. each. 19. each.
20. each. 21. every.

**Ex. 17. Correct answers**

1. *Each/ or every* member of the team *has* to undergo a fitness test before almost *every* match.
2. *All (of) the evidence* seems to suggest that he is innocent, and he has *every* chance of being released soon.
3. *Each/ or every* soldier was praised for *his/her/their* bravery, and were *each* given a medal.
4. The regulations say that students must pass every one of *their* exams to gain a qualification.
5. Nowadays we seem to have water shortages virtually *every* year. The one this year was very bad and lasted *all* summer.
6. I hope *everyone* will be comfortable here. We try to make *each/ or every* guest feel at home.
7. *Everyone* calls her Maggie, but her real name's Margaret.
8. Has *anyone* seen Lucy recently? I haven't seen her *all* day.
9. They *each promise* to adhere to my wishes and Spencer tells me he and Brianna will see us late Thursday afternoon. (Terry McMillan)
- 10.... in wet weather he took to smoking with Joseph, and they sat like automatons, one on *each side* of the fire. (E. Bronte)
- 11.*Everything* that he needed was there, and *each thing* was where it should be. (Robert B. Parker)
- 12.It was Winifred who went up to him, and, laying one hand on *each* of his swathed, helpless arms, said. (John Galsworthy)
- 13.His passion was getting into trouble, making life miserable for *everyone* else. (S. Grafton)
- 14.The nearer I got to the house the more agitated I grew; and on catching sight of it I trembled *every limb*. (E. Bronte)
- 15.I've read just about *everything* I could find about Alzheimer's on the Internet. (Terry McMillan)
- 16.*Each* person I asked says that *they are* going to enjoy the walk.
- 17.*Each* of them gave *their* opinion in turn.
- 18.If you don't listen carefully to his *every* word, he'll twist you around his little finger.
- 19.He had *every* intention of going to the party but in the end just fell asleep.
- 20.You will all receive a name badge on arrival.

**Ex. 19.**

1. each.
2. every; each.
3. each.
4. every.
5. each.
6. every.
7. every.
8. each.
9. each.
10. every.
11. each.
12. every; every.
13. everything; everybody.
14. every.
15. each; each.
16. everything.
17. every.
18. each.
19. each.
20. every; each/ every.

**Ex. 22. Correct answers**

1. *The whole course* only lasts for six months.
2. In the 1950s, *whole families*, from grandparents to children, used to go to football matches on Saturday.
3. Because of the bad weather *all of the schools* in the city were forced to close.
4. *The whole plan* is ridiculous. It will never succeed.
5. She must be exhausted. She was on stage *the whole performance*.
6. *All of the countries* in Africa have criticized the United Nations' decision.
7. She never had power to conceal her passion, it always set *her whole complexion* in a blaze. (E. Bronte)
8. And that was *all* he said on the subject: he did not make a single inquiry further, nor mention her in any way, except directing me to send what property she had in the house to her fresh home, wherever it was, when I knew it. (E. Bronte)
9. My wife reads *all your* books. (Robert B. Parker)
10. Bring *all* of your friends.
11. I just want to get my bonus, that's *all*.
12. *The whole town* was shocked by her death.
13. I was off sick for *the whole of the week*.
14. Give me *everything*.
15. Give me *all/ everything* you've got.
16. *All/ everything* I've ever known was the troubles.
17. *Everything* is in order. (Jack Higgins)

**Ex. 25.**

1. either.
2. either.
3. neither.
4. either.
5. neither.
6. either.
7. neither.
8. either.
9. neither.
10. either.
11. neither.
12. either.
13. either.
14. neither.
15. neither.
16. either.

**Ex. 26.**

1. both.
2. both; neither.
3. both.
4. either.
5. both.
6. both.
7. either.
8. neither.
9. both.
10. both.
11. either.
12. both.
13. either.
14. neither.
15. both; both.
16. both.
17. either.
18. both.
19. either.
20. both.

**Ex. 27. Correct answers**

1. All the children didn't come. (is possible in infml English. Not all the children came)

19. Many, if not all (of) the students, could speak English fluently.
20. Almost all his spare time is spent working in the garden.
21. Neither of us spoke again until we had reached home.
22. Everything depends on the last match of the football season.
23. Mrs. Lee and Mr. Pointer, both of them teachers, are standing as candidates in the next election.
24. Many people suffer side-effects from taking the drug. However, not all (of) these are bad.
25. I'm afraid neither answer is correct. Try again.
26. Everyone at the meeting voted for Terry.
27. Both the room and its occupants and the scene they gazed on, looked wondrously peaceful. (E. Bronte)
28. Miss Catherine seemed almost over fond of Mr. Linton; and even to his sister, she showed plenty of affection. They were both very attentive to her comfort, certainly. (E. Bronte)
29. He saw I knew naught about it, and he told how a gentleman and lady had stopped to have a horse's shoe fastened at a blacksmith's shop, two miles out of Gimmerton, not very long after midnight. And how the blacksmith's lass had got up to spy who they were: she knew them both directly. (E. Bronte)
30. The land on either side of the highway was flat, with white sand creeping up to the edges of the road. (S. Grafton)
31. I observed several splashes of blood about the bark of the tree, and his hand and forehead were both stained... (E. Bronte)
32. I was in my Sonya Burke getup, sitting with both feet on the floor, my knees demurely pressed together. (Robert B. Parker)

**Ex. 29.**

1. the other. 2. another. 3. the other. 4. the other. 5. another. 6. another. 7. the other. 8. another. 9. another. 10. another. 11. the other. 12. the other. 13. another. 14. the other. 15. the other. 16. another. 17. another. 18. the other. 19. the other. 20. another.

**Ex. 30.**

1. some. 2. any. 3. any. 4. some. 5. some. 6. any. 7. any. 8. any. 9. some. 10. any. 11. some; some. 12. any. 13. some. 14. any. 15. some.

**Ex. 31.**

1. *Any* bicycles parked in this area will be removed by the police.
2. If you have *any* (*or: some*) old books that you don't want, could you bring them into school.
3. The chemicals need to be handled with care as *some* give off poisonous fumes.
4. *Some* of the money collected will go to helping children with heart disease.

5. She lives *some* distance away from the nearest town.
6. *Any* (or: *some*) of his paintings, even the smallest, would today sell for thousands of pounds.
7. Although he was born in Spain, *some* of his earlier poems were written in French.
8. You'll like this new ice cream. Shall I save *some* for you?
9. *Any* large wild animals should be treated with care. They can all hurt people if they are frightened.
10. I haven't been here for *some* years.
11. Can you get *some* milk when you're out shopping? (or: *any* – it suggests that getting milk is difficult)
12. To get to town you can catch *any* of the buses that go along New Street. It doesn't matter what number it is.
13. *Any* students who are late will not be allowed to take the exam.
14. 'Have you *any* money?' – 'Yes.' – 'Loan me *some*.'
15. Why do you always ask if there's *any* news?
16. They won't want me to give evidence or *anything*? (John Galsworthy)
17. 'Do you think this is the way you should greet *someone* when you walk into this house?' (Terry McMillan)
18. Looking at himself in the glass, he said: 'Well, I'm damned if I'm going to show *anything*!' and went down. (John Galsworthy)
19. 'If you have got *anything* for Isabella, as no doubt you have, Nelly, give it to her. You needn't make a secret of it: we have no secrets between us.' (E. Bronte)
20. His mother was looking at him; he was suddenly conscious that she had really wanted him there next to her, and that he counted for *something* in this business. (John Galsworthy)

**Ex. 32.**

1. something. 2. anything. 3. somewhere. 4. something. 5. anyone/anybody.
6. anything. 7. anywhere. 8. somewhere. 9. anything. 10. anywhere.
11. someone/somebody. 12. something. 13. anything (or: something – it's likely).
14. anything. 15. someone's. 16. anyone. 17. anyone; anything.
18. nobody; somebody. 19. anything. 20. anything.

**Ex. 34.**

1. their. 2. everyone. 3. someone. 4. somebody. 5. their. 6. they. 7. someone.
8. everybody. 9. anyone. 10. someone. 11. some one. 12. somebody.
13. everyone. 14. their. 15. their. 16. they; they; they. 17. anybody. 18. anyone.
19. someone. 20. someone; them.



### Ex. 35. Correct answers

1. Salzman had saved us a table in the corner, with space reserved for Jill Joyce when she arrived. *Most of the tables* seated twelve. (R.B. Parker)
2. *Most people* aren't that good at improvising. (S. Grafton)
3. I know you liked him. *Most women* did. (S. Grafton)
4. *Most people* prefer to take a holiday in summer.
5. *Most of the clerks* of the office wanted to go on holiday in summer.
6. *Most flowers* bloom in spring.
7. *Most of the tulips* are in full bloom now.
8. *Most children* like sweets.
9. *Most of the children* behaved well.
10. *Most Englishmen* like gardening.
11. *In most countries* traffic keeps to the right.
12. *Most famous people* are persistent.
13. *Most actors* are publicity-conscious.
14. *Most men* want to dominate you. (Robert B. Parker)
15. I like *most types* of music.
16. *Most of the phone boxes* seemed to be vandalized.
17. *Most people* do their ordinary level exams at sixteen.
18. Well, I like to think I can turn my hand to *most things*. (Jack Higgins)
19. *Most people* want peace nowadays. (Jack Higgins)
20. *Most women* set out to try to change a man, and when he has changed they don't like him. (Marlene Dietrich)

### Ex. 36.

1. *None of the witnesses* have actually seen Jones fire the gun.
2. When their teacher stood on his chair, *none of the children* could understand what was happening.
3. The Democrats won a few seats in the south of the country, but *none* in the north.
4. Changing jobs was *no solution* to her problems.
5. 'Do I really have to go and stay with Aunt Agatha?' 'Yes, I'm sorry, but there is *no alternative*.'
6. When she was asked what costs were involved, she replied, '*None* at all.'
7. Many people have tried to persuade me to go into politics, but *none of the arguments* (or: none = no person) *has* (or: have; the singular form is more formal) made me change my mind.
8. Once there were five banks along the main street, but now there are *none*.
9. *No author* has won the prize more than twice.
10. When I looked along the shelves, *none of the books* seemed particularly interesting.
11. Of the ten most popular films this year, *none* was produced in Britain.
12. *No expense* was spared to complete the building on time.

**Look again at the sentences in Exercise 36. Which of them can you rewrite to make less emphatic using ...n't any...?**

4. Changing jobs wasn't any answer to her problems.
5. there isn't any alternative.
8. there aren't any.

**Ex. 37. Correct sentences**

1. There *was no date* on the jar to say when the jam should be eaten by.
2. Although he is French, none of his novels are set in France. (correct, *is set* is also possible)
3. None of the information we were given *was* particularly helpful.
4. Although I put food out in the garden every day, no *birds* ever took it.
5. I phoned the booking office but they said they had no *seats* left for the concert.
6. Surprisingly, there was no police officer outside the embassy. (correct, *were no police officers* is also possible)
7. Seeing that the soldiers were carrying no weapons, I walked towards them.
8. None of the company's business *is done* in the US.
9. I'm afraid that none of the local newspapers make much of a profit now. (correct, or: *makes*)
10. I phoned Sandra three times yesterday, but each time there *was* no answer.

**Ex. 38.**

1. I thought the exam paper I had set was quite easy, *but not one student got more than 50%*.
2. We wanted to buy John's car, but *no amount of persuasion could make him sell it*.
3. I asked the children if someone would move the chairs, but *not one of them offered to help*.
4. The damage to the paintings was so extensive that *no amount of effort could repair them*.
5. My cousin Frank has written six novels, but *not one of them has ever been published*.
6. Although local residents say that they don't want the new supermarket to be built *no amount of protest will prevent it* (or: *not one of them has written a letter to the government about it*).

**Ex. 39.**

1. nothing. 2. nobody. 3. none. 4. nobody. 5. none. 6. nobody. 7. none.
8. nobody; nobody. 9. none. 10. nobody. 11. nobody. 12. none. 13. nobody.
14. none. 15. nobody. 16. no one. 17. nobody. 18. nobody. 19. no. 20. no one.

**Ex. 40.**

1. few of. 2. a few of. 3. a little. 4. little. 5. a few of. 6. a little. 7. a few of. 8. the few. 9. few. 10. little. 11. the little. 12. a few. 13. a little. 14. a few. 15. a few.

**Ex. 41.**

<i>from conversations</i>	<i>from academic writing</i>
1. 'Can you lend me £100?' 'I'm sorry. I have little money myself.' ( <i>correct: don't have much money myself</i> )	5. Not many researchers have examined complaints made by male consumers. ( <i>correct: few</i> )
2. You can help yourself to biscuits, although there are few left. ( <i>correct: aren't many left</i> )	6. Scientists still don't know very much about the complex mechanisms of volcanic eruptions. ( <i>correct: still know very little</i> )
3. I usually have few days off work, but I felt very tired and had little energy, so I stayed at home. ( <i>correct: I don't usually have many days off work; didn't have much energy</i> )	7. Not much attention has been given to understanding how teaching is evaluated. ( <i>correct: little</i> )
4. Have you got a little string to wrap this parcel up? ( <i>correct, but a bit of string is more natural</i> )	8. Not many studies have specifically explored marketing strategies during economic recession. ( <i>correct: few</i> )

**Ex. 42.**

1. much. 2. many. 3. few. 4. little. 5. much. 6. few. 7. a few. 8. little. 9. little. 10. many. 11. few. 12. a few. 13. much. 14. few. 15. a few. 16. much. 17. a few. 18. a few. 19. a few. 20. a few.

**Ex. 43.**

Wellington, December 1st.

Dear Helen

Greetings from New Zealand! Sorry I haven't written recently, but I haven't had (1) *much* time. We've done (2) *a little/some* travelling during our stay. We've visited the South Island twice, and also (3) *some of/ a few of* the (4) *many* small islands that make up the country. (5) *much of* the west of the South Island is mountainous, but the east is quite flat and full of sheep! I'd never seen that (6) *many* in one place before. The weather was good when we went and we had very (7) *little* rain...

Before I came here, I didn't know that New Zealand had (8) *any/many* ski slopes. But (9) *some/many* people here seem to spend most of their winter skiing.

(10) *None of* us had skied before, so we were pretty awful. Susan learned quickly though, and after (11) *a few/some* falls she became quite confident...

(12) *Both (of)* the children send their love. They've grown a lot and I suppose they'll look (13) *a little* different to you when you see them again. (14) *Both* Susan and Tim really like it here. They've made (15) *some/many/a few* very good friends, and (16) *some of/many of/a few* of them are planning to come over to England soon...

You asked about the animals here. No, we haven't seen (17) *any* snakes – there are (18) *none* in New Zealand! In fact, (19) *few of* the animals in New Zealand were originally from here, (20) *many/some* were introduced from overseas – (21) *some of/a few of/many of* them, like the rabbit, from Europe... And yes, we really did see (22) *some/ a few* whales...

So you heard about the volcano! There are three main volcanoes on the North Island, and (23) *each of* them is still active. But I think we're quite safe here in Wellington...

(24) *Many of/some of/a few of* the people I work with are Maori. Almost (25) *all of* them live on the North Island, with very (26) *few* apparently, on the South Island.

(27) *All (of)* the Maori we've met have spoken English, although I've been told that just (28) *a few* speak only the Maori language.

If you see (29) *any of* our friends in England, tell them we'll see them (30) *all* soon. Although (31) *many of/some of* them said they would try to visit us, (32) *few of* them did. Only Bob, Jenny and Paul came. We'll be really sorry to leave the (33) *many* good friends we've made here...

Things are going to get even busier as we pack up to come home, and there'll be (34) *little* chance to write in the next couple of weeks. So this will probably be my last letter before we see you again.

Love to (35) *all (of)* the family,

Don, Mary, Susan and Tim

#### Ex. 45. Correct sentences

1. We'd like to buy a new car, but we'll never be able to afford *one*.
2. Many of the questions are difficult, so find the easier *ones* and do those first.
3. We had an orchard, so when we ran out of apples, we could just go and pick *some*.
4. Help yourself to more nuts if you want *one/any*.
5. Only time will tell if the decisions we have taken are the correct ones.
6. I haven't got an electric drill, but I could borrow *one* from Joseph.
7. 'Which is Avice, the young one or the old one?' – 'The young one.'
8. He gripped the edge of the table, and dizzily saw Annette come forward, her eyes clear with surprise. He shut *his own* and said. (John Galsworthy)
9. Let me hope my constitution is almost peculiar: my dear mother used to say I should never have a comfortable home; and only last summer I proved myself perfectly unworthy of one. (E. Bronte)
10. He felt her warm hand slip into his. (John Galsworthy)

**Ex. 46.**

1. Their marriage was a long and happy one.
2. We've got most of the equipment we need, but there are still some small pieces of equipment we have to buy. no
3. Traffic is light in most of the city, but there is heavy traffic near the football stadium. no
4. 'Are these your shoes?' 'No, the blue ones are mine.'
5. All the cakes look good, but I think I'll have that one on the left.
6. I was hoping to borrow a suit from Chris, but his suit doesn't fit me. ('his one' is possible in informal speech)
7. If you're making a cup of coffee, could you make a cup of coffee for me? no
8. If you're buying a newspaper from the shop, could you get one for me?
9. At present, the music industry is in a better financial state than the film industry. No
10. Nowadays, many people have a mobile phone, but I've never used one.
11. Have you seen that the clothes shop on the corner has re-opened as a shoe shop? no
12. 'Which oranges would you like?' 'Can I have those ones, please?' (but some people would consider 'those ones' to be incorrect)
13. 'We haven't got any oranges.' 'I'll buy some oranges when I go to the shop.' no
14. The damage to the car was a problem, of course, but an easily solved one.
15. He has interviewed my friends – the ones I have now and the ones who have been with me in former years.
16. Two more buses came up and pulled in behind the first one.
17. My heart is beating so fast I wish I didn't have one. (Terry McMillan)
18. 'Some of these questions are stupid.' 'Which ones, Lovey?' 'You know which ones.' (Terry McMillan)
19. I have had my great passion; her passion is perhaps to come – I don't suppose it will be for me. (John Galsworthy) no

**Ex. 47.**

1. The government has produced a number of reports on violence on television, the most recent (one) only six months ago.
2. The zoo is the only one in the country where you can see polar bears.
3. In a pack there are 26 red cards and 26 black (ones).
4. I have my maths exam tomorrow morning, but I've already prepared for that (one).
5. Australia may have the most poisonous spiders, but the biggest (ones) live in Asia.
6. These strawberries aren't as good as the ones we grow ourselves.
7. It was made for one of the early kings of Sweden, but I don't remember which (one).

8. The floods destroyed some smaller bridges, but left the main ones untouched.
9. Jo Simons has written 13 stories for children, every one totally gripping.
10. The protesters held another demonstration this weekend that was even bigger and more successful than the first (one).
11. 'I'm spending the weekend going to some of the London art galleries.' 'Which (ones) are you planning to visit?'
12. The film on TV tonight doesn't look very interesting. There was a good one on last night, though.
13. Then I suppose he addresses his letters to the people who are to read them. And this (one) is addressed to Isabel.
14. 'Count backward from a hundred by sevens. Just do as much as you can.' 'I ain't never been good in math. Give me (an) easier (one).' (Terry McMillan)
15. The floor was of smooth, white stone; the chairs, high-backed, primitive structures, painted green: one or two heavy black ones lurking in the shade. (E. Bronte)
16. This feather was picked up from the heath, the bird was not shot: we saw its nest in the winter, full of little skeletons. Heathcliff set a trap over it, and the old ones dare not come. (E. Bronte)
17. I beg to differ with you. Anyway, he's not the only one in his forties around here nor does he have a cap on being emotionally frazzled or overly sensitive. (Terry McMillan)
18. He made no reply to this adjuration; only plodding doggedly down the wooden steps, and halting before an apartment which, from that halt and the superior quality of its furniture, I conjectured to be the best (one). (E. Bronte)
19. But I already know how to spell all the words and even the ones for extra credit. (Terry McMillan)
20. There was a carpet: a good one, but the pattern was obliterated by dust. (E. Bronte)

### **AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE SUBJECT AND THE PREDICATE**

#### **Ex. 1.**

1. A number of shoppers *have* complained about the price increases.
2. I can assure you that everything *is* perfectly safe.
3. Either of the dentists *is/are* (*are* is more likely) available. Which one do you want to see?
4. The majority of primary school teachers *are* women.
5. Each of Susan's colleagues *has/have* sent her a personal letter of support.
6. Although some people find cricket boring, each match *is* different.
7. We've got two cars, but neither of them *is/are* (*are* is more likely) particularly new.
8. All the office staff *have* agreed to work late tonight to get the job finished.
9. A lot of the pollution *is* caused by the paper factory on the edge of town.

10. None of the TV programmes *is/are* (*are* is more likely) worth watching tonight.
11. Researchers have reported that neither of the so-called 'environmentally friendly' fuels *is/are* (*is* is more likely) less damaging than petrol or diesel.
12. I hope everyone *has* a good holiday. See you next term.
13. The number of pupils in school with reading difficulties *has* fallen this year.
14. Some people *have* the strangest hobbies. My brother collects bottles!
15. None of the information *is* particularly useful to me.
16. What he'd really like us to buy him for his birthday *is/are* some new Nike trainers.
17. A large number of police officers *were* present at the demonstration last week in case of trouble.
18. At present 10,000 kilometres *is* the longest walking competition held in the Olympics.
19. Either the twins or John, the eldest brother, *is/are* going to make a speech at the Golden Wedding party.
20. Both my brother and sister *have* lived in this town all their lives.
21. Neither her sons nor her daughter *has/have* a piano.
22. Pollution, together with water erosion, *is* taking its toll on the buildings.

**Ex. 3.**

1. is. 2. is. 3. is. 4. has been stolen. 5. were forced. 6. are all gone. 7. are thinking. 8. were drowned. 9. is/ are going (in informal speech). 10. is. 11. doesn't respect. 12. am buying. 13. has brought. 14. is. 15. say. 16. is. 17. is. 18. is. 19. is. 20. are. 21. are. 22. was. 23. have been. 24. have. 25. were. 26. is. 27. has voted. 28. is. 29. is. 30. are taken away.

**Ex. 4.**

1. were. 2. is. 3. was (in careful English)/ were. 4. was. 5. was/ were (in informal English). 6. were. 7. have. 8. have. 9. has. 10. was. 11. were. 12. was. 13. are. 14. knows. 15. has; has. 16. exercise; do. 17. is. 18. was. 19. consume/ consumes. 20. is. 21. were. 22. was. 23. were. 24. is. 25. were. 26. are. 27. is. 28. is/ are (in informal English). 29. is. 30. was. 31. were. 32. is. 33. are. 34. is. 35. was; was. 36. were. 37. were. 38. was. 39. were. 40. was.

**Ex. 5.**

The new premises we plan to occupy in Camford are now being built. The outskirts of this city *are* an ideal site for a company like ours. R and D *are/is* an important part of our work, and next year fifty per cent of our budget *is* to be spent on our Camford centre. Some of our staff in the US are being asked to relocate, and eventually around ten per cent of our US workforce *are/is* to move to Britain. However, the majority of our new employees *are* to be recruited locally, and we think that the local community *are/is* going to benefit

enormously from this development. A number of business leaders and the local Member of Parliament *are* being invited to a meeting next week. Unfortunately, neither the Company President nor the Managing Director of Macroworth *is/are* available to address that meeting, but I and other senior managers *are* to attend.

## **THE ADJECTIVE**

### **THE CATEGORY OF DEGREES OF COMPARISON**

#### **Ex. 2.**

1. more difficult one. 2. warmer. 3. the most intelligent. 4. the hottest month. 5. cheaper than. 6. better. 7. most wonderful. 8. more comfortable than. 9. simpler. 10. the luckiest. 11. worse. 12. the worst. 13. the most boring. 14. taller. 15. fastest. 16. colder. 17. quickest. 18. more simple and violent. 19. the happiest and jolliest. 20. wiser. 21. best. 22. youngest. 23. tallest. 24. greatest. 25. keenest. 26. most influential. 27. the taller. 28. the worst; the best. 29. more sinister; guiltier. 30. best.

#### **Ex. 3.**

1. lesser. 2. latest. 3. further. 4. last. 5. oldest. 6. furthest/ farthest. 7. elder. 8. farthest. 9. last. 10. lesser. 11. older. 12. next. 13. latest. 14. latest. 15. last. 16. nearest. 17. older. 18. older. 19. older. 20. latest. 21. last. 22. last. 23. last. 24. further. 25. last. 26. further. 27. next. 28. last. 29. less. 30. near. 31. far. 32. last. 33. further. 34. latest. 35. latest. 36. far. 37. late. 38. near. 39. older. 40. latest. 41. last. 42. farther. 43. next.

## **ORDER OF ADJECTIVES**

#### **Ex. 1.**

1. such a responsible boy. 2. Most of the people involved. 3. All the companies concerned. 4. over three hundred people present. 5. This involved process. 6. The present situation. 7. the children responsible

#### **Ex. 2.**

1. sick. 2. ill/ poorly. 3. hurt. 4. sick. 5. faint. 6. faint/ light. 7. healthy/ well.

#### **Ex. 3.**

13. a second-hand well-maintained sports car with a low mileage.  
14. a beautiful antique English polished mahogany dining-table.  
15. a grey and red American canvas pair of trainers which I can use for jogging.  
16. a pink and white cottage summer dress for my holiday.

#### **Ex. 4.**

### **NOT A DOG'S DINNER**

Shoes: expensive handmade Italian leather: these are my pride and joy. I own a beautiful old pair or I did until yesterday, when I discovered that one of



the shoes was missing. I had left the shoes on my back doorstep to do some gardening. My neighbour has a large friendly dog called Sam.

When I saw that one of my shoes had disappeared, I knew that Sam had taken it. I can't say he behaved badly. He just behaved like a dog. Leather looks good and tasted good too. I unwillingly gave Sam the remaining Italian shoe and then followed him. I not only found one unchewed Italian shoe, but also a pile of things Sam had been borrowing, including my wife's red fur-lined slippers, which Sam had tried to have for dinner!

**Ex. 5.**

8. small blue Japanese car.
9. large old furnished house.
10. beautiful wooden coffee table.
11. powerful combined military forces.
12. fantastic German new invention.
13. wonderful soft woolen rug.
14. small square metal jewellery box

**Ex. 7.**

1. a young black man
2. a tall dark man
3. a big wooden spoon
4. a long wooden spoon
5. a delicious big birthday cake
6. a big fat Italian opera singer
7. a large old frying pan
8. a pair of black leather riding boots

**Ex. 8.**

Dear Alan,

I'm writing this letter from *my beautiful new flat* in Stratford. Although it's modern, it's in *a very old building* which has totally renovated last year, and *the original wooden beams* have been kept in the sitting room. It's quite small, and is *a suitable flat for one person*, but it's *extremely* comfortable for me. The sitting room leads on to *a garden similar to yours* which is full of wonderful yellow *and* red flowers. Stratford is a *nice small town* and is very quiet in the winter. At the moment, though, in the middle of the tourist season, the traffic is *absolutely* terrible. But despite this I think I'm going to be absolutely happy here, and I hope you'll get over to see me *very* soon.

All the best,

Mark

## **ADJECTIVE AND PARTICIPLE**

### **Ex. 1.**

1. tiring. 2. upset. 3. upsetting. 4. enchanting. 5. enchanted. 6. delighted.

### **Ex. 2.**

1. confused. 2. frightening. 3. interested. 4. irritating. 5. surprised. 6. depressed. 7. relaxing. 8. bored. 9. annoyed. 10. embarrassed.

## **ADJECTIVE AND PREPOSITION**

### **Ex. 1.**

1. angry with. 2. sorry about. 3. pleased with. 4. angry about. 5. pleased about; at. 6. sorry for/ concerned about. 7. concerned about. 8. afraid for/ concerned about. 9. concerned with.

### **Ex. 3.**

1. about/ at. 2. with. 3. of. 4. to. 5. of. 6. about. 7. for. 8. from. 9. of. 10. at/ by. 11. of. 12. about. 13. with. 14. from. 15. to. 16. of. 17. to. 18. of. 19. of. 20. of/ about.

## **ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB**

### **Ex. 1.**

1. hard. 2. hardly. 3. hard. 4. wide. 5. wide. 6. well-. 7. well. 8. good. 9. fast. 10. fast. 11. wrongly/ incorrectly. 12. wrong. 13. close. 14. loud. 15. free. 16. lately/ recently. 17. hard. 18. hardly. 19. last. 20. first and last. 21. lately. 22. late. 23. highly. 24. high. 25. unjustly/ unfairly. 26. near. 27. nearly. 28. fast. 29. hard. 30. wide. 31. right. 32. hard. 33. lately. 34. hard. 35. late. 36. hot. 37. high. 38. highly. 39. fast. 40. lately. 41. late. 42. dead. 43. high. 44. terrible. 45. badly.

### **Ex. 2.**

1. lately. 2. widely. 3. mostly. 4. slow. 5. little. 6. wrongly. 7. quickly. 8. highly. 9. far. 10. further. 11. long. 12. late.

### **Ex. 3.**

1. well. 2. good. 3. well. 4. well-placed. 5. good. 6. good. 7. good.. 8. well.

### **Ex. 4.**

1. bright/ brightly. 2. brightly. 3. dear/ dearly; cheap/ cheaply. 4. cheaply. 5. thin/ thinly. 6. loud/ loudly. 7. closely. 8. close. 9. clear/ clearly. 10. clearly. 11. bad.

### **Ex. 5.**

1. cowardly. 2. motherly. 3. lovely. 4. sickly. 5. unfriendly. 6. monthly. 7. lively. 8. elderly.

## ADJECTIVE, ADVERB AND INTENSIFIER

### Ex. 1.

1. such a high price. 2. such a good feeling. 3. such bad breath. 4. such an awful day. 5. so deeply. 6. so few people. 7. so scary. 8. so many. 9. such a lovely day. 10. so much.

### Ex. 2.

1. too. 2. enough. 3. enough. 4. too. 5. very. 6. very/ too/ so. 7. enough. 8. enough. 9. so/ very. 10. such.

### Ex. 4. Correct answers

1. It was a fairly good day so we went for a walk.
2. He's rather/ quite/ fairly noisy in class.
3. She's always been quite/ fairly hard-working.
4. I quite like the theatre but I prefer films.
5. John is rather more talkative than his brother.
6. Yes, I quite agree with everything you say.
7. It came as quite a shock to get home and find the house burgled.
8. I'm afraid I found the film a bit boring.

### Ex. 5.

1. a. 2. c. 3. d. 4. b. 5. d.

### Ex. 6.

1. very. 2. by far. 3. very. 4. far. 5. very. 6. a lot. 7. far/ a lot.

### Ex. 7. Correct sentences

A: Ray told me the people next door are very noisy.

M: Schh! Not *so* loud. They'll hear you. Actually, they're not *such* bad neighbours as we first thought.

2M: The previous owners wanted as *much* as £ 60 000 for it, but £ 50 000 was *as* high as we could do.

3A: How large *a* garage have you got?

M: It's very small. In fact we can't get our car in but that's not too big *a* problem. We park it outside.

4M: It's not such *a* beautiful garden, but it's okay for us. The main problem is a huge tree as few as 3 metres from the house, which keeps out the light.

5A: Do you think Ray will be happy here?

M: Well, I'm not *so* sure, and he will be in the car for as *much* as 3 hours a day.

**Ex. 8.**

1. much/ any. 2. much/ far/ a lot. 3. much/ far. 4. much/ far. 5. any/ much.  
6. much/ any. 7. much/ far/ a lot.

**Ex. 9.**

1. terribly. 2. virtually. 3. perfectly. 4. badly. 5. severely. 6. enormously.

**Ex. 10.**

1. fairly. 2. completely. 3. fairly. 4. completely. 5. completely. 6. fairly.  
7. completely. 8. completely.

**Ex. 11.**

1. b. 2. a. 3. c. 4. b. 5. c.

**Ex. 12.**

1. quite. 2. quite. 3. far better. 4. extremely. 5. very/ extremely. 6. utterly.  
7. absolutely/ quite. 8. absolutely/ utterly.

### **CONSTRUCTIONS WITH COMPARISON**

**Ex. 2.**

1. sooner, sooner. 2. more, more. 3. faster, sooner. 4. older, wiser. 5. sooner, better. 6. longer, less.

**Ex. 3.**

1. as intelligent an article as. 2. as normal life as. 3. not as beautiful a house as/  
not such a beautiful house as. 4. not such well-behaved children as. 5. not as  
popular a president as/ not such a popular president as. 6. not as major an issue  
in the town as/ not such a major issue in the town as.

### **SUBSTANTIVISED ADJECTIVES**

**Ex. 1.**

#### **A HUMAN IDEAL**

A just society is a human ideal. We would all like to live in a place where *the rich* are not too rich and *the poor* are not too poor; where no one would be shocked or embarrassed at the way *the old* are cared for. *The blind* would have as much opportunity as *the sighted*. *The deaf* would be able to develop their skills. *The unemployed* would not depend on the state, because no one would be unemployed. *The healthy* would take care of *the sick*. The most innocent people in society, *the young* would be protected. In this happy place no one would feel depressed or distressed. Unfortunately, in the real world, life can be both distressing and depressing. So let's be thankful for a sense of humour. I recently saw a notice in an undertaker's window and I wasn't sure whether it was

addressed to *the living* or *the dead*. It said: “Once you’ve tried one of our funerals, you’ll never want to try another!”

**Ex. 2.**

1. – . 2. the. 3. a. 4. a. 5. the. 6. – . 7. a. 8. the; the. 9. – . 10. the. 11. the. 12. a. 13. a; – . 14. – . 15. – . 16. the. 17. the. 18. a. 19. – . 20. a. 21. the. 22. the; the. 23. the. 24. the. 25. the. 26. – ; – . 27. a. 28. the. 29. the. 30. the.

**Ex. 3.**

1. the past. 2. the good; the late. 3. relatives; the dead. 4. superiors. 5. the bad. 6. favourites. 7. opposites. 8. reds; greens; yellows. 9. Italian. 10. superiors. 11. Romans. 12. elders. 13. the imaginable. 14. the last. 15. the past. 16. the French. 17. the inevitable. 18. the large wrong. 19. favourites. 20. the past. 21. – /the future. 22. the worst. 23. the dark. 24. the bitter; the sweet. 25. the blond. 26. least/ the very least.

## LIST OF AUTHORS AND BOOKS USED IN THE EXERCISES

1. A Dictionary of Humorous Quotations / ed. by Ned Sherrin. Oxford University Press, 1995.
2. Aesop's Fables. Wordsworth Editions Limited, 1994.
3. Alexander L. Longman Advanced Grammar. Longman Group, UK Limited, 1993.
4. Alexander L.G. Longman English Grammar. Longman Group UK Limited, 1988.
5. Austen J. Pride and Prejudice. London, 2004.
6. Biber Douglas, Conrad Susan, Leech Geoffrey Longman Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English. Pearson Education Limited, 2002.
7. Blokh M.J., Lebedeva A.Y., Denisova V.S. English Grammar Exercises. M., 1985.
8. Bronte E. Wuthering Hights.
9. Chase J.H. Hit and Run. London, 1967.
10. Chase James Hadley A Lotus For Miss Quon. M.: Менеджер, 2004.
11. Chase James Hadley Hit and Run. London: Panther, 1967.
12. Christie A. Best Detective stories. New York, 2002.
13. Christie A. Cat among the Pigeons. London, 1994.
14. Christie A. Death in the Clouds. New York, 1999.
15. Emily Bronte Wuthering Heights. Wordsworth Editions Limited, 1992.
16. F. Scott Fitzgerald Selected Prose. M.: Менеджер, 2000.
17. F. Scott Fitzgerald Tender is the Night. Wordsworth Editions Limited, 1995.
18. Foley M., Hall D. Longman Advanced Learners' Grammar. Pearson Education Limited, 2003.
19. Foley Mark and Hall Diane Longman Advanced Learners' Grammar. Pearson Education Limited, 2003.
20. Galsworthy J. In Chancery. Moscow: Progress Publishers, 1974.
21. Gordon E.M., Krylova I.P. A Grammar of Present Day English. Moscow, 1980.
22. Gordon E.M., Krylova I.P. A Grammar of Present-day English. Moscow, 1980.

23. Grisham J. A Time to Kill. New York, 1989.
24. Grisham J. The Runaway Jury. New York, 1996.
25. Heinlein R. Friday, New York, 1983.
26. Hewings M. Advanced Grammar in Use. Cambridge, 1999.
27. Hewings Martin Advanced Grammar in Use. Cambridge University Press, 1999.
28. Instant Quotation Dictionary. New York: Laurel, 1990.
29. J.K. Rowling Harry Potter and the Half-Blood Prince.
30. Jack Higgins Drink with the Devil.
31. John Galsworthy In Chancery. Wordsworth Editions Limited, 1994.
32. John Galsworthy The Man of Property. Wordsworth Editions Limited, 1994.
33. Ken Follett Pillars of the Earth.
34. Krutikov Y.A и др. Exercises in Modern English Grammar. Moscow, 1964.
35. Krylova I.P. An English Grammar Practice Book. Moscow, 1978.
36. Lawrence Sanders. The Seventh Commandment.
37. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English. Москва: Русский язык, 1992.
38. Longman Exams Dictionary. Pearson Education Limited, 2006.
39. Longman Language Activator. Pearson Education Limited, 1993.
40. Maugham S. Stories. Ленинград, 1976.
41. McCarthy M., Felicity O'Dell. English Vocabulary in Use. Cambridge, 1995.
42. Murphy R. English Grammar in Use. Cambridge University Press, 1988.
43. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English, Seventh edition. Oxford University Press, 2005.
44. Oxford Pocket English Idioms // Jennifer Seidl, W. McMordie. Oxford University Press, 1992.
45. Robert B. Parker Perish Twice.
46. Robert B. Parker Shrink Rap.
47. Robert B. Parker Stardust.
48. Rosenberg N. Trial by Fire. New York, 1996.
49. Salinger J.D. The Catcher in the Rye. Moscow, Progress Publishers, 1979.

50. Sheldon Sidney Bloodline. New York: Warner Books, 1977.
51. Side Richard and Wellman Guy Grammar and Vocabulary for Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency. Pearson Education Limited, 1999.
52. Sue Grafton 'B' is for Burglar.
53. Sue Grafton 'E' is for Evidence.
54. Sue Grafton 'I' Is for Innocent.
55. Sue Grafton 'M' Is for Malice.
56. Terry McMillan The Interruption of Everything.
57. Thompson A.G. and Martinet A.V. A Practical English Grammar Combined Exercises. V.1. Oxford, 1979.
58. Truman M. Murder at the National Gallery. New York, 1997.
59. Tryon T. Harvest Home. New York, 1973.
60. Wilde Oscar Fairy Tales. Wordsworth Editions Limited, 1994.
61. Wilde Oscar The Aphorisms. М.: Менеджер, 2002.
62. Гришкун Ф.С., Отрошко Л.М. Систематизирующий курс грамматики английского языка. Нижний Новгород, 2006.
63. Гуревич В.В. Практическая грамматика английского языка. Упражнения и комментарии: Учебное пособие. 6-е изд. М.: Флинта: Наука, 2009. 296 с.
64. Гуревич В.В. Теоретическая грамматика английского языка. Сравнительная типология английского и русского языков: Учебное пособие. 3-е изд., испр. М.: Флинта: Наука, 2004. 168с.
65. Каушанская В.Л., Ковнер Р.Л. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка. Ленинград, 1973.



# СИСТЕМАТИЗИРУЮЩИЙ КУРС ГРАММАТИКИ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

(ИМЕННЫЕ ЧАСТИ РЕЧИ)

Учебное пособие

Издание 3-е, стереотипное

Составители: Ирина Николаевна Кабанова  
Валентина Ильинична Курышева  
Надежда Николаевна Лисенкова

Редакторы: Н.С. Чистякова  
Д.В. Носикова  
Ю.А. Белякова

Лицензия ПД № 18-0062 от 20.12.2000

---

Подписано к печати			Формат 60 x 90 1/16
Печ. л.	Тираж	экз.	Заказ
Цена договорная			

---

Типография НГЛУ  
603155, Н. Новгород, ул. Минина, 31а